THE

GEOGRAPHY

OF

RGVEDIC INDIA
THE GEOGRAPHY OF RGVEDIC INDIA

[A Physical Geography of Sapta Saindhava]

MANOHAR LAL BHARGAVA
Late Lt.-Colonel,
Indian Medical Service

LUCKNOW
THE UPPER INDIA PUBLISHING HOUSE LTD.
1964
EDITOR'S PREFACE

Those who have been intimately connected with the author of this work, late Lt.-Col. Manohar Lal Bhargava, testify that he started work on this subject in his early thirties and was still at work when in 1939 he fell sick and died. The readers of this book will realise that the enormity of work that it involved needed a whole life-time of patient research and devotion. The most admirable feature has been that an Indian of such affluent circumstances in 1930's was so keenly given to scholarship and was so confident of his thoroughness that he could boldly differ with Indian scholars of ancient past like Yāśka and British and German scholars of recent past, with arguments difficult to refute.

Providence was unkind in taking away such a great man at the early age of 49 and that was perhaps the reason why the author could not draw his own maps which, one can be sure, he must have had in his scheme. In the absence of such maps the only alternative has been to reprint such maps of Cunningham’s Ancient Geography of India as have been referred to by the author. It is hoped that they will help the reader to follow the line of argument of the author to an appreciable extent.

As this book was written in 1930's, the late author gave for the modern Geographical names those that were current then. For instance he used Rājputāna, The United Provinces of Ṭāgrā and Oudh etc. Such names are no longer current and the modern reader may find it easier to read instead Rājasthān, Uttar Pradesh etc. In places where substitution was altogether innocent, it has been effected but at others it was not so simple. For instance the words India, Pañjāb, etc. have undergone a change in the meaning and caution has been exercised by pointing out in the footnotes that these terms carry the meaning ascribed to them in pre-partition India. Yet it has not been possible to correct such references completely. Many regions which now are in Pakistan have been treated as parts of India in this book for the simple reason that when the book was written they were parts of India. It is hoped that the readers of this book do not require to
be told that places like N. W. F. P., Bahāvalpur, Sindh etc. now fall in Pakistan.

In the original manuscript the verses and the references ran with the text. Liberty has been taken of separating them as footnotes to make a convenient reading of the text possible.

The edition of the Ṛgveda published by Vaidika Sāṁśodhana Maṇḍala, Poona has been taken as the standard for quoting the text and numbering the verses. Every attempt has been made to print the correct text by tallying it with this edition of the Ṛgveda. Some references from their sources could not be checked on account of non-availability of the books with the editor. It is believed that they are right because in the text checked, the discrepancy was extremely rare. All this has been necessitated because of our misfortune that the author is no more.

No effort has been spared to publish the work as free of errors as possible realising that a small error in this type of work could grievously injure the cause the late author wanted to plead.

The late author had described this work as ‘The Physical Geography of the Sapta Saindhava’. There is no doubt that this title described the work most accurately; but for the ease of comprehension by a large number of intermediaries who will be instrumental in making this book available to the ultimate person—the reader of this book—the present name has been given to this book. We hope we are not guilty of showing disrespect to the late learned author by this encroachment.

Wherever there is an indication in the footnotes to see another footnote, it refers to the footnote of the same chapter unless otherwise noted. All the unnamed references in the footnote refer to the Ṛgveda. The Rāmāyaṇa means Vālmīki-Rāmāyaṇa.

Dr. Purushottam Lal Bhargava, Head of the Department of Sanskrit, Rajasthan University, Jaipur and Dr. K. D. Bharadwaj, Head of the Department of Sanskrit, Modern Higher Secondary School, New Delhi, have greatly contributed to ensure that the text of the entire book is accurate. But for the able guidance of these two learned Indologists it would have been extremely difficult to fathom this sea of names and places.

—P. D. Mehrotra
TRANSLITERATION SYSTEM

The following system of transliteration has been adopted in this book:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ह</th>
<th>न</th>
<th>य</th>
<th>ज</th>
<th>झ</th>
<th>ञ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ह</td>
<td>न</td>
<td>य</td>
<td>ज</td>
<td>झ</td>
<td>ञ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ह</td>
<td>न</td>
<td>य</td>
<td>ज</td>
<td>झ</td>
<td>ञ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>च</th>
<th>छ</th>
<th>श</th>
<th>झ</th>
<th>ञ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>च</td>
<td>छ</td>
<td>श</td>
<td>झ</td>
<td>ञ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>च</td>
<td>छ</td>
<td>श</td>
<td>झ</td>
<td>ञ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>प</th>
<th>फ</th>
<th>ब</th>
<th>भ</th>
<th>म</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>प</td>
<td>फ</td>
<td>ब</td>
<td>भ</td>
<td>म</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>प</td>
<td>फ</td>
<td>ब</td>
<td>भ</td>
<td>म</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>स</th>
<th>श</th>
<th>ष</th>
<th>स्त</th>
<th>श्व</th>
<th>ह</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>स</td>
<td>श</td>
<td>ष</td>
<td>स्त</td>
<td>श्व</td>
<td>ह</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>स</td>
<td>श</td>
<td>ष</td>
<td>स्त</td>
<td>श्व</td>
<td>ह</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapters</td>
<td>Pages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. The Seas</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The Mountains</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The Deserts</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Places</td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. The Rivers</td>
<td>37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section I</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section II</td>
<td>43</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section III</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section IV</td>
<td>102</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section V</td>
<td>110</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section VI</td>
<td>115</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section VII</td>
<td>118</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section VIII</td>
<td>126</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. The Boundaries of Sapta Saindhava</td>
<td>128</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The Great Change</td>
<td>132</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maps</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>145</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>151</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE SEAS

The most unmistakable features mentioned in the Ṛgveda are the four seas. Almost all scholars, with the exception of Das, have been puzzled by this fact, because they started with the theory that the Āryas were foreigners and they invaded the country from the north-west during the second or third millennium B.C. On account of this theory, they did not expect to find the geography of Ṛgvedic Sapta Saindhava to be much different from that of the North-Western India* of modern times. They were not prepared to recognise the existence of the four seas, as the recognition would have violently shaken their theory. They, therefore, either ignored the four seas or adopted subterfuges, to explain them away. Some have gone to the extent of saying that the Ṛgvedic Āryas were not acquainted with the seas or oceans, completely ignoring the innumerable allusions to them as well as to large ships and to navigation in shoreless and stormy waters.

Some of the indirect references are: knowledge of the ships of the sea, glory-seekers (i.e. adventurers) on the sea, profit-seekers (i.e. merchants) going in company to the sea; crossing in a ship and crossing the sea in a ship; embarking and urging the ship in the middle of the sea and riding the ridges (i.e. high waves) like swinging in a swing. Other references

---

* India means prepartitioned India, that is, including the territory now comprising Pakistan—Ed.
1. समुद्रानांकुलो IX-33-6 and चतुःसमुद्रः X-47-2.
2. e.g. समुद्र, सिन्धु, अष्ट्र, etc.
3. ब्राह्मानं समुद्रम् I-25-7.
4. समुद्रं न शब्दयाम् I-48-3.
5. समुद्रं न संचरणे सन्निध्याय I-56-2 and IV-55-6.
6. नावेऽं पारयं and सिन्धुमिभयं नावयाति I-97-7 & 8.
7. आ यद्यहारं बहुकश्च नावं प्रयत्नमद्दीर्याय मध्यमम्।
अधि यदयथं स्मृतिं चरणं प्रेक्ष इतियावंहे सुमो कम्। VII-88-3.
establishing the knowledge of the seas are wealth from the sea and the many verses which speak of the plight and rescue of Bhujjya Taugra, left in a cloud of water (i.e. mist) and brought to clear atmosphere; animated (i.e. fast going) ships able to stand stormy waters; sailing for three nights and three days in three winged cars (i.e. ships having sails) having one hundred feet (i.e. oars) and six horses (i.e. masts) to the desert or sandy shore across the sea of water; drifting in a sea without beginning (i.e. shoreless), non-stationary (i.e. billowy or stormy) and without hold (i.e. bottomless) in a ship having one hundred oars; from the floods of the sea in ships having sails and brown coloured or straight masts; drifting on the sea and going uninjured; drifting about in ships with self-yoked wings (i.e. sails).

Besides the above references there are many more, such as—in the Parāvat sea, rescued from the mighty surge of the seas (i.e. high seas) in fast going ships equipped with sails, from the beginningless darkness (i.e. all-pervading mist) in the middle of the sea in four ships; from the flood of the sea through dustless regions and leagues amidst the floods in ships equipped with sails; abandoned in the middle of the sea; deserted

8. राधेय च न आ पवत्वा सुमुद्रात् || IX-97-44.
9. Such as I-116-3 to 5.
10. तुष्यो व मुख्यातिविन्द संपदे राधे न करिकमुद्मृविन्वल्यो अदाया: ||
    श्वेतभुजुर्मृत्रिमल्लितारामानवल्याद्रज्जीवयोद्कार्यः || I-116-3.
11. तिर्यः् समस्तिवर्धितात् ज्ञाते दातृत्वात् मुख्यायुत्तत्वं पत्तः
    सन्तुष्ट्यम् ज्ञातायार्यः विष्णुः शानाना घनः पठवः || I-116-4.
12. अनामरम्ये तद्वैरियेयाः नासाः अर्गमनों समुद्रे।
    यदि द्विनां उत्त्वर्यमुम्बस्ते शानाद्रियाः नाबामातस्वायासम् || I-116-5.
15. भूरमाणि विभिन्तां स्वायत्तितिं: || I-119-4.
17. युव्वेऽत्त चकत्वं सल्लभु व ज्ञातान्तश्चि दिश्य चतुर्यास्य कम् ||
    चतुर्यास्य सिद्धं निर्न्तं लोक्यं नित्यं निर्न्तं निट्यं निर्न्तं निट्यं निर्न्तं निर्न्तं निर्न्तं निर्न्तं निर्न्तं निर्न्तं निर्न्तं निर्न्तं || I-182-5.
18. अवचतिं त्रिप्रस्तात्त्विन्तारामरम्ये तमांस प्रविष्ट्यमं
    चतुर्यास्य नाचो ऐश्वर्यं दुत्ता त्रिप्रबल्यामिलितः परापतिः || I-182-6.
19. त्ता मुख्यो विभिन्नतं: समुद्रात्लवयं सूर्यायुतः रजोभिः।
    अर्यमुखेयो ज्ञेण्यमित्रता परशिर्भिर्विजयोऽत्तिताः || VI-62-6.
in the middle of the sea and rescued by ships equipped with sails unflagging and undaunted (i.e. after hard and long search); in winged ones (i.e. ships equipped with sails); in chariots with sails; swinging in the sea beyond sandy regions and rescued by ships equipped with sails etc.

To pursue the matter further, Udamegha (in singular number), literally a cloud of water, can only mean mist when used in connection with a sea (samudra) having desert and sandy zones on its shore, specially when it is described as darkness without beginning in the middle of the sea. I disagree with Max Müller, who believed that the Rks contain mostly myths, but the darkness (tamas) of one verse described as a cloud of water (Udamegha) in another cannot rationally mean the night.

There are expressions in other verses used in connection with nau, and plava establishing the use of ships or boats propelled by sails attached to them. These expressions are pataṅga-ratha, rathavi, vi, patatri, vayo and paksi. Literally these expressions mean winged chariots and winged ones. But they must actually mean ships or boats propelled by sails attached to them as indicated by savyukti. We find the words aśva and karna (literally ear) used in connection with nau, and plava. These words must mean the masts to which sails were attached and the rudder respectively; the analogy being picked up from horse-chariots, which must have come into use before the sailing ships were constructed. Sails were called wings from the analogy with birds flying in the air.

Similarly the word śatapada (literally hundred feet) must mean one hundred oars as the word salāritra is translated as having hundred oars.

Needless to say that the navaś propelled by one hundred oars and having sails fixed to six masts and mentioned as plava in another verse referring to the same event must be big vessels, i.e. ships fit for sailing on high seas. Moreover, plava being in masculine gender must mean a ship.

21. युव भूज्युतवट्टं समुद्र उद्वृत्तमन्दो अभिचाणेः।
पत्तित्रिभिरभीमतः भीमभिरभिनाभिबिभिनापाराभल्ला। VII-69-7.
22. वयो। VIII-5-33.
23. र्वो विभि। VIII-5-32.
24. समुद्र आ रजसस पार द्विभिम नत मच्छ पत्तित्रिभि। X-143-5.
25. ब्रह्म अ रञ्जसू।
26. अप्सरान्तरवर्धं तमस। I-182-6 (See footnote 18).
27. I-116-5 and I-182-5 (See footnote 12 and 17).
According to these scholars, the lower course of the Indus was the biggest collection of water known to the Āryas. The reason for this conclusion probably is that they have taken the word ‘Sindhu’ to mean the river Indus only. They have ignored the fact that the word ‘Sindhu’ is used both for sea and the Indus. Also many verses 28 speak of samudra (sea or ocean) and ‘Sindhu’ together. The latter is used both in singular and plural numbers (i.e. to mean the river Indus or the several mouths of the Indus or rivers in general). Such verses clearly prove that the ṛṣis knew the sea or ocean as distinct from the river Indus.

I have spoken of the mouths of the Indus, as nadyo 29, in addition to Sindhuṣu (i.e. the Indus in plural number) which would, therefore, mean the several streams or mouths of the Indus by which it joined the sea. This is further confirmed by a verse 30 which describes Varuṇa as having cut the several channels for the Indus. The word sindhu, meaning the Indus or a river in general, must have, therefore, been quite distinct from the same word when used for a sea and, therefore, the words samudra and sindhu (the latter in the sense of sea) could not have been used for the lower course of the Indus.

The ṛṣis knew not only one, but more than one sea or ocean. This is proved by many expressions such as samudrāj 31 (i.e. in plural number meaning many seas), samudrā 32 (in dual number meaning two seas), sindhuṃām 33 (plural of seas) an expression which could not be applied to rivers in that verse as it speaks of the Āsvins halting there, paryaṛṣāṃsi 34 plural number, (round the seas), arṇavaiḥ 35 (in masculine gender meaning many seas) and other expressions meaning ‘from this sea and that sea’ 36 in opposition to

28. e.g. VI-19-5, VIII-6-4 & 35 and 92-22, IX-86-8 & X-65-13, 66-11 & 89-11.
29. IX-86-8.
30. प्र तेरुदरिणो यालवे पथः सिनथो। X-75-2.
32. समुद्र:। V-73-8.
33. सियो मूना। अरिं वां विस्पुदु तीव्रं सिन्धुता रथः। धिवा युथुः इत्यवः। I-46-8.
34. सितवृत्तः। V-59-1.
35. आ समुद्राद्विताय परस्मात्। VII-6-7.
the expression meaning heaven and earth; meaning Parāvat and Arvāvat seas; and meaning eastern and western seas, etc.

That the ṛṣis had the knowledge of sea is proved by many other verses. One verse speaks of the ‘Seven Rivers’ going to the ocean or sea. The same idea is expressed in other verses which speak of rivers flowing towards the sea, of rivers longing for sea, of rivers bowing to the ocean, of rivers swelling the sea, and of rivers flowing into the sea, though the number seven is not mentioned. This idea will be primarily applicable only to the main and independent rivers of the country and not to their tributaries and affluents. As will be explained in due course, some verses show that the Gaṅgā and the Yamunā must be counted among the seven main rivers. These two as well as some smaller rivers, that will be discussed in their proper places, did not and could not have joined the lower course of the Indus and could not be described as doing so by any stretch of imagination.

Further, expressions such as ‘like a sea stirring’, ‘Vasiṣṭha’s greatness deep like a sea’, ‘Indra spreading himself like a sea’, ‘sending forth unceasing flow of songs like water from ocean’s depth’, ‘Indra vaster than heavens and floods of ocean’ will be senseless if applied to the lower course of the Indus, where it appears it was divided into several channels in the Rgvedic times as it is now.

36. दिव आ पृथिव्या: ।
37. पराविति अबाविति समुद्रे या यथायावेति। IX-65-22.
38. समुद्रे अवबाविति अवबाविति। X-136-5.
40. समुद्रे न सवतो रोचकः। I-190-7.
41. समुद्रे न सिन्त्रबो याद्यानामः। VI-19-5.
42. नामन्त: कृप्तय: समुद्रस्वेव सिन्त्रवः। VIII-6-4.
43. वाबुधुः समुद्रस्वेव सिन्त्रवः। VIII-6-35.
44. समुद्रस्वेव सिन्त्रवः। VIII-92-22.
45. X-75-5 & 6.
46. यथा समुद्र एवमेति। V-78-8.
47. समुद्रस्वेव मद्यमा गम्भीरः। VII-33-8.
48. समुद्रस्वेव प्रचेये। VIII-3-4.
49. गिरी असितस्मां भो: प्रेषयं समयतः बुद्धानाद। X-89-4.
50. प्रायन्तिप्रायं समुद्रस्व धारे:। X-89-11.
51. IX-86-8 and X-75-2.
From the above it is clear that the Rgvedic Āryas were acquainted with sea, and it is unjustifiable to hold that they were unknown to them and that the biggest collection of water known to them was the lower course of the Indus river.

Proceeding on the wrong assumption that the Rgvedic Āryas did not know the sea, some have interpreted the expression ‘four seas’ to mean imaginary seas corresponding to the four quarters of the horizon. Others have unhesitatingly translated it to mean four divisions of the heavens. So far as I know, none has brought forward any valid reasons why the word ‘samudra’ should not be given its ordinary and natural meaning, viz. the sea or ocean, in those verses, beyond the statement that no seas were known to the Āryas about the time when they imagine the supposed Ārya invasion and occupation of the country to have taken place, or when they think the verses were composed.

- As far as their stand, that the Āryas were foreigners who invaded and occupied the country, is concerned, there is nothing definite to prove it. On the other hand, Indian tradition does not support the view. The Rgveda does not show the Āryas as outsiders. The universally accepted fact that this book is the oldest available Ārya literature and its language the nearest approach to the so-called proto-Ārya, Indo-Germanic or Indo-European speech, indicates that the Sapta Saindhava was the cradle of the Ārya race; while all other Ārya peoples, whose language got corrupt by contact with non-Āryas and by residence in foreign lands and whose earliest literature dates from progressively later periods westwards, had migrated from this country. This point has been very ably developed by Kalla in his *Home of the Āryas* and I have not yet read its refutation.

Their second basis about the time of composition of the verses also appears wrong. There is no evidence, beyond arbitrary conjectures, to show that the verses were originally composed when they are supposed to have been composed. The Indian tradition declares the Vedas to be anādi, i.e. coming from times immemorial, viz. a period beyond their knowledge. I shall be the last person to say that such traditions should be accepted without proper consideration, but I hold that there must be sound arguments brought forward to reject them.

Now, let us take the question of migration. Max Müller\(^2\) says: ‘But as in his language and in his grammar he (the Hindu) has preserved some-

---

thing of what seems peculiar to each of the northern dialects singly, as he agrees with the Greek and the German where the Greek and the German seem to differ from all the rest and as no other language has carried off so large a share of the common Ārya heirloom—whether roots, grammar, words, myths, or legends—it is natural to suppose that, though perhaps the eldest brother, the Hindu was the last to leave the Ārya family.53.

But the Hindu did not leave the ancient home. He was victorious in the numerous wars mentioned in the Rk verses. On account of these wars his other brothers left or were forced to leave. The Hindu was left in the sole possession of the land. Why should he leave his home then? The natural consequence would be that the victorious Hindu stayed in his ancestral home. To conclude otherwise is illogical.

We must remember that the word used is samudra. This word naturally as well as ordinarily means 'sea' and not 'heavens' or 'horizons'. To understand the ancient verses correctly, words should be translated into their ordinary or natural meanings, as long as that gives sense. Words should be interpreted differently only when those meanings have no sense. Now samudra translated as sea gives as good (in fact better) sense to the two verses as the forced meaning heaven or horizon. There is, therefore, no valid reason why the word should be given special meanings simply to suit the conclusions of later-day scholars. Conclusions should be based on known facts, rather than on distortions to suit otherwise untenable theories. Many verses which reveal expressions like 'wealth from sea or from heaven',54 'like wind, like forest and like sea stirring',55 'placing sea and heavens in apposition',56 'waters from heaven' i.e. floods of rain water, flowing dug (from earth), i.e. gushing out of springs or flowing by itself, i.e. 'rivers speeding to ocean';57 'the sea, the river, the region (the atmosphere), the firmament, Aja Ekapāda (the sun) and the watery cloud';58 'vaster than heaven and ocean'59 etc., clearly show that the rṣis differentiated the sea

54. राघि समुद्रातुर्वा दिवसपरि । I-47-6.
55. यथा वाताय वधा वनं वधा समुद्र एवंति । V-78-8.
56. VII-6-7. (See footnote 35).
57. या आपो विद्या उत्त वा लक्ष्यित खनिनित्रिता उद वा या: स्वयं: । समुद्रां वा: । VII-49-2.
58. समुद्र: सिंघूर्जो अन्तरिक्षमात्र एकपात्रनिविद्वः । X-66-11.
59. X-89-11. (See footnote 50).
from the atmosphere, heaven and horizon. Surely the samudra of VII-49-2 could not possibly be a sea in the heaven.

The existence of the four seas is assailed, again very unjustifiably, in another way. Some authors have read in the Epics and the Purāṇas description of the seven seas in the geography of the world. Many scholars of the Rgveda have compared the mention of the four seas in the Rgveda to the description of the seven seas in the Epics and the Purāṇas, and say that, just as the description of the seven seas in the later literature (i.e. the Epics and the Purāṇas) is unreal and imaginary, so is the mention of the four seas in the Rgveda. But a study of both will easily prove that there can be no comparison between the two and the conclusion is absolutely unjustified. It is very likely, as suggested by some scholars, that the later idea of the seven seas originated from a misunderstanding of the Rgvedic expression 'Sapta Sindhavaḥ',61 the word 'sindhu' being misinterpreted as sea.

The existence of the four seas is denied by others in one more way. They have asserted that, unlike the rivers and the mountains, the four seas are not named in the Rgveda and must, therefore, be imaginary rather than real. It is surprising to find even some research scholars making such statements completely ignoring facts. One would like these scholars to quote the Rgvedic name of the Sulemān ranges, the Salt range and the Northern Pāriyātras, all of which, according even to their own theories, must have been known to the people of Sapta Saindhava.

As a matter of fact the four seas are named. They are called the Arvāvat or the Pūrva, the Parāvat or the Para, the Sarasvat and the Śaryāṇāvat. It may be said that the first two are not proper names, but so are the Sindhu (river or sea), the name of the biggest river and the Himālayas (the abode of snow) the name of the largest and the highest mountain ranges of the country. Both of these names Sindhu and Himālaya may be applied to any river or sea and any snow-covered mountains respectively. In fact the word 'sindhu' is quite frequently used as a common noun in the verses sometimes meaning a river and at others a sea. It is also not quite clear whether the word 'Himavanta'62 means the modern Himālayas only or all snow-clad

---

60. VII-49-2 (See above footnote 57).
61. सप्तसिन्धवः 1
62. हिमवन्तः 1 X-121-4.
mountains. The probabilities are in favour of the latter. There is, thus, no reason why Arvāvat or Pūrva and Parāvat or Para should not be accepted as proper names of the two seas situated in the east and the west of the country.

These two seas—Arvāvat or Pūrva and Parāvat or Para—connected with the rise and the setting of the sun are quite naturally frequently mentioned together. At one place, the sun, addressed as keśin (literally hairy, i.e. having innumerable rays), is said to have his home in the Pūrva as well as the Para sea, meaning that it rose in the morning from the former and retired for rest in the evening to the latter. In Sapta Saindhava the sun would always be seen rising in the south-east and setting in the south-west and more so from the autumnal to the vernal equinoxes. The Pūrva and the Para seas would, therefore, be situated in the south-east and the south-west of the country. It is these two seas, which are described as the Arvāvat (the near or the eastern) and the Parāvat (the far or the western) seas, where Indra is said to be living in one or the other. It must be these two seas, through which the Aśvins, the precursors of the sun, are said to travel presumably during the night. In another verse, the chariot of the Aśvins is said to rest on the shore (in singular number) of seas (plural number). The seas must be the Arvāvat, the Sarasvat and the Parāvat seas. These three seas were imagined to come close to each other on the other side of the earth so as to have one common shore between them. On this common shore the chariot of the Aśvins could be supposed to rest in the middle of the night. Again, in another place the same deities are said to go round the seas, i.e. more than two seas viz. the Arvāvat, the Sarasvat and the Parāvat; while at still another place their chariot is described as travelling over seven rivers, i.e. over the 'Land of the Seven Rivers'.

These two verses, when considered together and compared with other

63. X-136-5. (See footnote 38).
64. उभे समुद्राव शीतात यश्च पूर्व उत्तरः.
65. VIII-12-17, 13-15, 82-1 & 97-4.
67. तीर्थम् स्निहृतं I-46-8.
68. पर्यव्याः-I-180-1.
verses describing the movement of the Āśvins, refer to the nightly and daily journeys respectively of these deities.

Moreover, at a place, the Āśvins are said to live in a house in the sea obviously during the night. It must, therefore, refer either to the Parāvat sea, into which they sank in the evening, or the Arvāvat, from which they rose in the morning. Again, in yet another place, there is an expression meaning 'from this or near and that or far sea', in association with 'from heaven and earth'.

The seas referred to must be situated at the ends of the country, very likely in the east and the west, though the verse may also refer to the southern and northern seas at the same time. They would, therefore, be the Arvāvat and Parāvat, if not also the Sarasvat and the Śaryaṇāvat as well, indicating the four main directions with the Earth and the Heaven supplying the nadir and the zenith, as Agni Vaśvānara is said to give hidden treasures brought from all of them at the rise of the sun. Finally the Parāvat, the Arvāvat and the Śaryaṇāvat, all three are mentioned and the Soma juice is said to be pressed on their shores. No doubt, the word samudra is not mentioned in several verses, but is used for Arvāvat and Parāvat in others, and Śaryaṇāvat will be proved to be the name of a sea later on.

So far the existence of the four seas has been proved collectively. Now the existence of each of them will be established separately. There are many verses speaking of each of them alone.

The Arvāvat or Pūrva Sea. At one place the sun is said to come out of a sea, at another place the same idea has been expressed, while at yet another place the Devas are credited with having brought out the sun, which was hiding in a sea. At one place Āśvins are referred to as the

70. समुद्रेष्याकृते मृदुःत्त VIII-10-1.
71. आसमुद्रादवराधा परस्मातु्त VII-6-7.
72. दिव या पृथिव्या: VII-6-7.
73. वे सीमास: पराविता वे अवाबितु मुच्छोरे। वे बादः शर्यणावित। IX-65-22.
74. e.g. VIII-12-17, 82-1, & 97-4 and IX-65-22.
75. यन्त्रकाण्ति पराविता यद्वाबितु वृत्तहृदु। यद्रा समुद्र बन्धसोपवितेदिस्त VIII-13-15.
76. उच्चसमुद्राष्टु I-163-1.
77. समुद्रादुवराधर्तु VII-55-7.
78. समुद्र आ गृठह्या सूर्यमहक्षत्तेन X-72-7.
sons of a sea,79 i.e. they were born or they came out of a sea every morning. At another place their chariot is said to reach the heaven after turning up from a sea80, while according to the verse following it the sea is said to water their horses with Rasā.81

In the last three verses referred to above, the words sindhu and samudra have been used indiscriminately, the former in two of them. This proves that the word sindhu means a sea and not the river Indus. Moreover, its association with the rise of the Aśvins, the heralds of the sun, shows that the sea was situated in the south-east. Therefore, it cannot be the lower course of the Indus in the south-west. The last verse also indicates that the Aśvins were seen rising over the place, where the Rasā river of this verse joined the Arvāvat sea. The Rasā, therefore, must be a river in the south-east and not a north-western tributary of the Indus.

It may be added that the oldest place held sacred to the Aśvins and mentioned in the Mahābhārata82, between Tarantuka and Pañcana, with Koṭi in the east and Varāha and Soma in Jayantī on the west, is still recognised at Āsan about ten miles east of Jīnd on the southern border of the Kurukṣetra area. It is thus evident that the sea of all these verses was the Arvāvat or Pūrva sea, situated in the south-east of Sapta Saindhava.

The memory of this Arvāvat or Pūrva sea is also retained in later Saṁskṛta literature. The great sage Viśvāmitra Kauśika (a Ṛgvedic ṛṣi) is mentioned in this literature to have practised austerities in low lands near the sea.83 The Āpagā (a branch of the Ṛgvedic Āpayā) which was later known as Caturāṅga or Catarṅg is the river known as the Kauśikī in Saṁskṛta literature and is mentioned in the Mahābhārata84 and Rāmāyaṇa,85 though the ancient tradition is placed in a wrong setting there. It is associated with Viśvāmitra in the Rāmāyaṇa. Later on, the lower course of the Rākā or the Rāksī also came to be known as Kauśikī.

The ancient Gāḍhipuri, named after Gāḍhi or Gāthin, the father of

79. सिन्धुमातरा I-46-2.
80. उध वां रच: परि नक्ति चामा वस्मुध्रादिनि नतिं वाम् IV-43-5.
81. सिन्धुवै वां रसया सिन्धुवद्वानू IV-43-6.
82. Vana parva LXXXIII.
83. सामरानुपे vide: Pargiter Ancient Indian Historical Tradition p. 260.
84. Vana parva LXXXIII.
85. I-XXXV.
Viśvāmitra, and now called Gādhili, and Kheḍī Gāḍhiān, i.e. an overflow settlement of the Gādhīs or Kuśikas, are both situated close to each other, on the right bank of the Kauśiki-Cataṅg, about seven miles east of Thānesar. The Altareya Brāhmaṇa and indirectly the Rgveda itself say that the Kuśikas were a branch of the Rgvedic Bharatas and show the former to be associated with the latter. According to the Rgveda, the Bharatas ruled in the valleys of the Drāṇḍavatī, the Āpayā and the Sarasvatī, in the district of Mānuṣa, with Mānuṣa town and Ilāspada (both near Kaithal) as their centres. The place sacred to their tribal Devī, viz. the Bhāratī, is still remembered at Kopar or Koer, twenty miles further east and on the old course of the Kauśiki. The Kuśikas, therefore, would have flourished in the eastern part of the holy Kurukṣetra area and the sea associated with their first great sage, viz., Viśvāmitra, a Rgvedic seer, will be the Arvāvat sea of that Sāmhitā.

The geologists say that the sub-Himalayan regions now known as the Uttar Pradesh, Bihār and Bengāl, were covered by a sea aeons ago. H. G. Wells has shown this sea as existing right in the east of Saptā Saindhava about 50,000 years back and further east about 25,000 years ago in two maps in his Outline of History. Das has identified this with the Pūrva sea of the Rgveda though he calls it the Gangetic Sea.

As far as I can judge, that sea must have receded a long distance from Saptā Saindhava, at least in the later days of the Rgvedic age, and the Āryas moved further east beyond the Gaṅgā. Had there been some other barrier difficult to cross we would have had some reference to it. But there is no reference—not even in the latest hymns. The Arvāvat or the Pūrva sea of the Rgveda must have, therefore, existed close by.

At present there are several shallow marshes of varying sizes at various distances, a few miles south, south-west, and west of Najafgaḍh township in the Delhi province. They are still euphemistically called the lake of Najafgaḍh. This is the only geographical feature in the south-east of Saptā Saindhava, which might now be the last remnant of the sea or at least a large lake.

The largest among them, about five miles south of that town, still bears that name; while the others are called after the villages that have sprung

86. VII-3-17.
87. नि त्वा दच वर बा पृथिव्य इलायासदे सुदिनते अह्वाप।
 दृष्टिह्यां मानुष आपायाय सरस्वत्यां रेवनगे विदीह॥ III-23-4।
near them on their dried and filled up beds. Most of them get completely dry or retain very little water during summer. The small lake near Jahāṅgīrpur (in Jhajjar tehsil of Rohtak district) is the only one that justifies the name. They receive the rain water from the neighbouring parts of the Rohtak and Gurgāon districts and the Delhi province except from the north-east and get joined together through narrow channels after heavy rains. They are drained by a small rivulet, which running north-east joins the Yamunā a little above Delhi and generally always contains some water.

After very heavy rainfall over drainage areas, this lake still receives the waters of the Sāhbī and its three main tributaries from the south and south-west and of the (lower) Naī from the north. The Kṛṣṇāvati from the south-west also reaches it after exceptionally heavy rains, but the Duhān from further south-west does not do so now, though it used to fall into this lake not very long ago. As will be shown later on, these four were permanent and fairly large rivers in ancient days. The lake would, therefore, have been permanent and large in those days. Cunningham has shown the lake about twenty miles long (north-south) and about seven miles broad.88

It is probably this lake, that is called the Dvaitavana in the Āṭapatha Brāhmaṇa89. It is said to have got that name from Dhvasan Dvaitavana, a powerful king of the Matsyas, who performed horse sacrifice on its shore. The Matsyas lived in the northern Pāriyātras (extending from Delhi to Khetādi in Rājasthāna from north-east to south-west and continuous with the Arāvalī in Rājasthāna south and south-westwards) in post-Rgvedic ages and the lake situated not far in the north of these hills may well have been included in their territory during the reign of a powerful king like Dhvasan, or at least his domains may have extended up to its southern coast.

This lake and a forest of the same name are repeatedly mentioned in the Mahābhārata90, in connection with the movements of the Pāṇḍava brothers during their exile. Unfortunately the journeys are not described in detail. But it is clear that according to the epic the lake and the forest were situated

88. Ancient Geography of India: map no. X.
89. XIII-5-4-9.
90. In Vana parva and virāṭa parva.
in the south of Sarasvatī, east of the Kāmyaka forest and Trṣabindu lake which are said to be located at the head of the desert and in the west of the Yamunā, a position which aptly fits in with that of the Najafgaḍh lake. The Pāṇḍava brothers, during the last year of their exile, for obvious reasons, performed their journey from the lake to the capital of the Matsyas in a round about way to hide their track.

This lake is not mentioned in Vana parva\(^{92}\), which describes the whole of the Kurukṣetra area between the Sarasvatī and the Drṣadvatī, or in other words, between Macakruka (Amīn) in the north-east, Tarantuka (Sīnkha) in the south-east, Rāmahradas (Rāmrail) in the south-west and Arantuka (Beharjaccā) in the north-west, in full details. This shows that the lake was situated in the south of the Drṣadvatī. The lake called Dvaita\(^{93}\) is differently named and appears to be the present Sivan lake between Beharjaccā (Arantuka) and Māṅgnā (Sapta Sārasvata). It cannot, therefore, be the Dvaitavana lake of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa and Mahābhārata which must be situated near the domains of the Matsyas.

It is apparent from these references that the lake of Najafgaḍh, formerly known as the Dvaitavana lake, was a famous and noteworthy geographical feature of that part of the country in early days.

As will be explained later on, the northern Pāriyātras appear to have been high mountains in the Rgvedic age. They would, therefore, have a much heavier rainfall and very probably also snowfall over them in those days. The Drṣadvatī, of which the (lower) Naī appears to have been a branch, will also appear to have been a large river. All the four rivers falling into the Dvaitavana lake must, therefore, have been much bigger in the Rgvedic age, than what they were in the Mahābhārata and even in the earlier Brāhmaṇic periods. The lake itself must consequently have been a far bigger collection of water in the former ages than in the later periods. It was this huge collection of water in the south-east that was known as the Arvāvat or the Pūrva seas in the Rgvedic age. It is nowhere mentioned by any other name in the Rgveda.

To be a complete barrier between Sapta Saindhava and modern India to the east of the Gaṅgā, so as to keep the Āryans away from the latter, this sea would have extended from the foot of the northern Pāriyātras in the

\(^{92}\) LXXXIII.

\(^{93}\) Śalya-XXXVII.
south-west to the foot of the Himalayas in the north-east. It must have, therefore, extended from the Gurgaoon district through the Delhi province in the north-west of the hills and then the Meerut district to the Bijnor district across to the present channels of the Yamuna and the Ganga. There are no means to judge how far it extended south eastwards beyond Delhi, where the northern Pariyatra end. But it must have been fairly broad to prevent the Aryas from crossing it and occupying the land on its other side in the Rigvedic age.

The Paravat Sea. As explained above, the Para or Paravat sea must have been situated in the south-west of Sapta Saindhava. The existence of this sea is proved by other verses as well. In a verse, the chariot of the Aśvins is said to go into a sea. In another, the car-borne Aśvins are prayed to come back from the Paravat sea. In still another the sun is described as sinking into a sea, while in yet another, Indra is said as enjoying in the Paravat sea, and one verse also speaks of winds blowing from the sea. Three of these verses speak of the sea by its proper name; while the sea of the other two, into which the Aśvins followed by the sun sank, cannot but be a sea in the south-west. The sindhu of the last verse cannot be the river Indus, which being the biggest and the only river called specially by that name would not need the qualifying word Paravat, while a sea may. Similarly, the ‘sindhu’ of a verse, in which the sun was said to sink, is more likely to be a sea rather than a river, as Aśvins, his precursors, are said to go into a sea (samudra). Finally one verse speaks of Agni shining from the Paravat (sea) across a desert, showing that this sea had begun to recede south-westwards even in the Rigvedic age.

The memory of the Paravat sea is still retained in the area once occupied by it. The Indo-Jhelum-doab in the south of the Salt range is still known as the Sindhu Sagar like the Ganga Sagar at the mouth of

94. X-136-5. (See footnote 38).
95. र्थो दत्ताववल्यः समुद्रे बलिक्षमेते, I-30-18.
96. नासस्या रथया परावत आत्मेव वातः स्वसराणि गच्छति य I-34-7.
97. अविन्धु बहुगं मीरिक स्वादुरस्तो न वेतो मुगल्लुङ्ग्मानु।
    गम्भीरसोसो रजसो विभान: सुपरवश: सतो अस्य राजा॥ VII-87-6.
98. परावति समुद्रे VIII-12-17.
100. VII-87-6. (See footnote 97).
the Bhāgirathī-Huglī, the old course of the Gaṅgā. Besides, a tehsīl and
its chief town in Lyallpur district* are still called Samudrī (i. e. belonging
to a sea or a small sea). The Parāvat sea would have, therefore, covered a
good part of the Indo-Jhelum-doāb probably up to a little below the
confluence of the Gomal and the Indus wherever it might have been
situated in those days, with an arm extending eastward into Lyallpur
district. Naturally, it would have also covered the whole of the modern Sind
province*. Even after its disappearance from the south-western Pañjāb
it covered almost the whole of that province† in the early days of the
post-Ṛgvedic period as mentioned in the Mahābhārata102, where Camasod-
gheda, the site of the confluence of the Sarasvatī and the Sindhu, in later
days, is said to have been (once) situated at the sea-coast. Gradually it
receded southward and was called the western sea in Indian literature,
though it has now been named the Arabian sea in our geography text-books.

The Sarasvatī Sea. This sea has been mentioned in several places103.
Being the sea into which the most holy Sarasvatī river fell and being
named after her, it was imagined as the husband of that river and its
sisters, and deified by the ḍīsīs. But at a place it is said to possess waves104
and is described as full of honey105 and dripping butter106; terms often used
to mean 'full of water' in the case of rivers. In the next verse it is described
as having a swelling bosom worth seeing by all107, just as river Sarasvatī
is said to have a bosom108. At yet another place, it is said to be growing
like a virile, young and strong male among ladies connected with
sacrifices109. This in plain language means that the sea received the water
of the rivers on the banks of which sacrifices were performed. The sacred
river is called Yajñīyā 110 (connected with sacrifice) in other verses.

---

* Now in Pakistan,
† i. e. Sind.
102. Vana parva LXXXVIII
103. i. e. in I-164-52, VII-95-3, & 96-4 to 6 and X-66-5.
104. ॠत्सूरो VII-96-5.
105. मघुमात्रो VII-96-5.
106. तुतुस्तुत: VII-96-5.
108. सतन: I-164-49.
109. सवारवर्षे नयों योपणामु वृषा तिशुर्वासभो यज्ञियासु VII-95-3.
110. यज्ञिया।
There can thus be no doubt that the Sarasvat sea was originally a huge collection of water into which the Sarasvati and other holy streams fell. This sea, situated in the south of Sapta Saindhava between the Arvāvat sea in the east and the Parāvat sea in the west, was crossed by the Aśvins, followed by the sun, in their journey from east to west. This fact explains the use of plural instead of dual number\(^{113}\) in connection with the movements of the Aśvins.

The memory of the remnants of this sea in post-Ṛgvedic ages is also retained in later Śaṁskṛta literature. In the Rāmāyaṇa\(^ {112}\), Rāma Aiksvāku is credited with having dried the sacred Drumakulya sea in the north, on the shores of which the Dasyu Ābhīras lived. From the Mahābhārata\(^ {113}\) the śūdra Ābhīras appears to be living near Vinaśana, where the Sarasvati disappeared in the sands of the desert* i.e. somewhere about what is now Sūratgaḍh in Bīkāner district. The Drumakulya sea must have, therefore, been situated in the north-western parts of Bīkāner. As will be shown in its proper place, the last remnant of this sea, into which the Sarasvati and the Śutudrī fell till some time before the days of Rāma Aiksvāku, was situated in the north of Sūratgaḍh and Anūpgaḍh between 29°-30' & 29°-45' of latitude and 73°-15' and 73°-45' of longitude to the east of the Bīkāner-Baḥāvalpur\(^ {\dagger}\) boundary in that area. In the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas Kuvalayāśva Aiksvāku (also known as Dhundhumāra) is said to have killed a Rāḵṣasa, Daitya or Asura named Dhundhu near a sand-filled sea called the Ujjālaka in the desert\(^ {114}\). Dhundhār or Dhundahār is the ancient name of the modern Jaipur district. It is said to be the area where Dhundhu used to live and was killed\(^ {115}\). The whole area both in the north and south of a line between Jaipur town and the lake of Sāmbhar is still dotted with many lakes and the northern ones are generally the salt water ones. The Ujjālaka would, therefore, be the name of the southern remnant of the Sarasvat sea situated about 27° of latitude and between 74° and 76° of longitude. The salt lakes of Sāmbhar, Sargot,

\(^{111}\) सिन्धुनार्त in I-46-8 and अर्जिन्स in I-180-1.

\(^{112}\) VI-XXII.

\(^{113}\) Śalīya: XXXVII.

* This is explained in the chapter on rivers.

\(^{\dagger}\) now Indo-Pak.

\(^{114}\) Pargiter: Ancient Indian Historical Tradition, p. 260.

Rivāsā, Kucāvan and Dīḍvānā etc. are its still surviving remnants, the remainder having been filled up with sand. The existence of this part of the Sarasvat sea is also recognised in the *Imperial Gazetteer of India*\(^{116}\).

Another remnant of the Sarasvat sea appears to be the Trāṇābindu lake near the Kāmyaka forest at the head of the desert, mentioned in Mahābhārata\(^{117}\) but not traceable in the Rgveda. The Pāṇḍavas are said to have gone there from the Dvaitavana lake and forest. The marshy area round Khaḍyāl (Ellenābād), in the south-west of Sirsā in the Hissār district currently known as Dhanur lake, is the only possible region which could now represent it, as it is situated on the western boundary of the ancient Kuru kingdom and on the north-eastern border of the desert. Till lately it used to be flooded by the water of the Ghaggar-Sarasvatī after rains, before that river could proceed any further. Now the river bed has been dammed at Oṭū and the controlled water is distributed by canals. But it still gets marshy after heavy rains.

There were, thus, three remnants of the Sarasvat sea when it ceased to exist as such at the close of the Rgvedic period, *viz.* the Drumakulya sea in the north, which got dried up about the times of Rāma Aikṣvākū, after the rivers joining it had changed their courses; the Trāṇābindu or Dhanur lake in the north-east which has been reduced into a marsh with the decline of the Sarasvatī and its tributaries; and the Ujjālaka sea in the south which dried up in parts and got filled with sand. The rest of the Sarasvat sea is now represented by the lake of Sāmbhar, called the lake of Agastyā in Mahābhārata\(^{118}\), and other smaller salt lakes in that area.

The Sarasvat sea, thus, seems to have covered the present Rājasthāna desert extending over the sites of part of the modern Sirsā tehsīl and the modern Bīkānēr, Jaisalmer, Jodhpur, a part of the Jaipur district and adjoining Pakistan desert comprising Bahāvalpur. It was very likely connected with the Parāvat sea in the west and north-west and it was very probably the combination of these two seas that was known as the ocean. The mention of deserts\(^{119}\) in the Rgveda shows that these two seas or the oceans had begun to recede even in the Rgvedic days.

\(^{117}\) Vana parva, CCVIII.
\(^{118}\) Vana parva LXXXII.
\(^{119}\) चन्द्र (in plural number): 1-35-8; 2-33-10; 3-8-7; 4-33-7; 5-7-7; 6-12-5; 9-97-3; 10-86-20; 89-6; 187-2.
The Śaryaṅavat Sea. Śaryaṅavat is wrongly supposed to be the name of a lake in or near Kurukṣetra. The only evidence in support of this erroneous belief appears to be the statement of Sāyaṇa, who lived in southern India in comparatively recent days. He cannot be accepted as an authority. The sacred places in Kurukṣetra area are described in detail in Saṁskṛta literature but nowhere is the lake mentioned. A lake of that region is called Sannihati in Mahābhārata\textsuperscript{121} and is said to be situated not far from Sthānuvaṭa. It is still known by the same name in the east of Thānesar town. But that name is not a corruption of Śaryaṅavat as suggested by some modern archaeologists. It is a Saṁskṛta word meaning the ‘site of union’ of all the sacred spots which that lake is supposed to be according to Mahābhārata. There is, thus, no warrant to maintain that Śaryaṅavat was the name of a lake in or on the skirts of Kurukṣetra.

As mentioned before, Śaryaṅavat is associated with Parāvat and Arvāvat and Soma is said to be pressed on their shores\textsuperscript{122}. The latter two having been proved to be the names of two seas, it is very likely that the former is also the designation of a sea. At one place\textsuperscript{123} Indra is said to drink Soma on the (shore of the) Śaryaṅavat while in another place\textsuperscript{124}, he is said to enjoy on the shores of Śaryaṅavat. According to some verses\textsuperscript{125}, that deity lived or enjoyed himself on the shores of the Arvāvat and the Parāvat seas. The Śaryaṅavat as used in the verses, in which Indra is said to drink Soma or enjoy it on its shores, was therefore very probably a sea too. This is confirmed by three verses. In one verse, Indra is said to have killed the enemies with his Vajra supposed to have been made from the bones of Dadhīci\textsuperscript{126}. According to the next verse, Indra searching for the horse’s head (of Dadhīci, \textit{i.e.} his Vajra), which was cut off in the mountains, found it in Śaryaṅavat\textsuperscript{127}. In still another verse, the Vajra (of Indra) is described as lying in a sea full of water, the rivers bringing their waters to

\textsuperscript{120} Mahābhārata, vana LXXXIII and Śalya XXXVII et seq.
\textsuperscript{121} Mahābhārata, vana LXXXIII.
\textsuperscript{122} IX-65-22. (See foot note 73).
\textsuperscript{123} शर्याणवत शोमावनम: विकरुत य-113-1.
\textsuperscript{124} इन्द्रशर्याणवत विधि य-6-39.
\textsuperscript{125} VIII-12-17, 13-15, 82-1, & 97-4.
\textsuperscript{126} इन्द्रो दर्शीचो शर्यानवतः ग्रांप्रतिच्छुक्तं: जयान नवतीर्णव इ-84-13
\textsuperscript{127} इच्छास्वस्य यज्ञदार: पवित्रयपपरितम्। तद्विद्वद्याणवतम्॥ इ-84-14.
it as their tribute. Quite obviously the two last verses refer to the same fact and the Śaryanāvat of the one is the sea of the other, which received the water of many streams. The former verse also shows that the sea was situated at the foot of or amidst mountains, where the horse's head of Dadhīci was cut off and was thrown away and from where it was carried to the bottom of Śaryanāvat. In another verse, Śaryanāvat is associated with Suṣomā and Ārjikīyā (both in feminine gender) and Soma is said to grow by them. In still another place mountains are described as belonging to Śaryanāvat. As will be shown later on, the Suṣomā and Ārjikīyā were Sohān and Hāro rivers of the northern Pañjab. The Soma is generally recognised to have been a plant of very cold climate and mountainous regions. The verses, therefore, show that the Śaryanāvat sea was situated in northern Sapta Saṁdhava and amidst mountains near the regions of the Sohān and Hāro rivers. In one place, Śaryanāvat is associated with Suṣoma and Ārjika (both in masculine gender and singular number) and all three are described as full of houses and being visited by men in carts with shorter front wheels. All three appear to be the names of mountains, whose slopes and valleys were well populated and where visitors climbed up with their carts sloping forwards, so as to make it easier for the animals to draw them. The Suṣoma and the Ārjika would, of course, be the mountains that gave rise to the rivers bearing their names in feminine gender, while the Śaryanāvat will be the mountains surrounding the sea of that name. The Ārjika (in masculine gender and singular number, i.e. the mountain) is also mentioned after the Śaryanāvat sea in the first verse, while the Ārjikas (in masculine gender and plural number i.e. the tribe which lived on the slopes of the Ārjika mountains and in the valley of the Ārjikīyā river and gave their name to the two) as well as Kṛtvas, (probably another name of the Suṣomas living in the valley of Suṣomā river and on the slopes of Suṣoma mountains) are mentioned at a place after the

128. समुद्रेण जलत् सतत उन्द्रा बच्चो अभिवृत्तः। भरत्त्स्मे संयतः पुरः प्रस्वरणा बलिम्।
   VIII-100-9.

129. अर्जः ते शर्याणावति सुपोमःयाभिषि प्रियः। आर्जःकैये मदिन्तम्। VIII-64-11.

130. पर्वतान्तर्याविषयः। X-35-2.

131. सुपोमे शर्याणावत्वार्जःक फस्त्यावति। ययुनित्र्क्र्वता नरः। VIII-7-29.

132. आ पक्षस्व दिसां पत्ता आर्जिकास्तोमं मीठूः। IX-113-2.
Šaryaṇāvat in the previous verse and all of them are associated with the Soma\textsuperscript{133}.

It is thus quite clear that Šaryaṇāvat was the name of a sea as well as of mountains on its shores or surrounding it. Both were situated in the northern Sapta Saṁdhava near the regions of the Suṣoma and the Ārjika mountains and the Suṣomā and Ārjikīyā (the Sohān and the Hāro) rivers. The mention of the former before the latter two, except in one place,\textsuperscript{134} where Šaryaṇāvat mountain is mentioned between Suṣoma and Ārjika mountains, suggests that the Šaryaṇāvat sea was situated to their east, \textit{i.e.} to the east of the Murree and Abbotābād hills *

The only possible remnants of a sea amidst mountains in that area are the lakes of Kaśmīr now known as the Vūlar and Ṣāl etc. The name Kaśmīr is said to be an abbreviation of Kaśyapa Mīra, \textit{i.e.} the lake of Kaśyapa. According to local tradition the whole valley was at one time a huge lake, almost a sea, named Saṭisara, which was burst at Bārāmulā by Sīva with his trident and drained. It was then populated by Kaśyapa, after whom it came to be called by that name (Nīlamata).

As far as I could trace, this legend is not mentioned or alluded to in the Rgveda, though the ṛṣis of the Kaśyapa clan are mentioned in, and in connection with, the hymns. As will be explained in due course, the probable event behind this legend took place at a later period. The Kaśmīr valley is drained by Jhelum river, whose Rgvedic name Vītaśā (of the size of a span) suggests that it was a very small river in ancient days. The smallness of the river must be due to the fact that the gorge through which it comes out was shallower and narrower in those days and allowed a comparatively small quantity of water to flow out of the valley at a time. The Kaśmīr valley would then be a much larger lake of which the Vūlar and the Ṣāl etc. are the last remnants. The so-called bursting and draining of the lake would really be due to some seismic disturbances, which resulted in the widening and deepening of the gorge through which the Vītaśā came out, thus allowing a much larger quantity of water to drain away, increasing the size of the river and decreasing that of the lake. The tradition thus proves that the Kaśmīr valley was a large lake in early days.

\textsuperscript{133} य बार्षकिंकु भक्तवर्ये मथे पत्यायानम्. IX-65-23.
\textsuperscript{134} (See footnote 131) VIII-7-29.

* in Pakistan.
There are verses\(^{135}\) which indicate that, in the north of the salt range, the Indus river flowed more or less in the same channel in the Rgvedic days as at present. But one verse speaks of Indra having turned the water of the Sindhu upwards or northwards.\(^{136}\) The Indus runs north-westwards only in the east of Kaśmīr to its confluence with the Gilgit river and nowhere else throughout its course. It could, therefore, be described as having been turned upwards or northwards only in the east of Kaśmīr. When the Sindhu did not run upwards, (i.e. northwards) it must have flowed westwards in its upper course and entered the Kaśmīr valley which it now skirts in the north-east. A small tributary of the Jhelum in Kaśmīr is still called Sindh (Sindhu) which joins that river from the north-east in the middle of the valley about ten miles below Śrīnagar. It is supposed to be the most sacred river of Kaśmīr and is described as the Gaṅgā of that valley. Its confluence with the Jhelum is supposed to be as holy as that of the Gaṅgā and the Yamunā at Prayāga\(^{137}\). This small river has some history behind it. It rises in the east of Śrīnagar and the first part of the road to Leh is along its valley. Probably it was known to be the ancient course of the Indus below Leh till some seismic disturbances changed the configuration of the hills in its valley and made that river flow in a more northerly direction. This occurrence was naturally ascribed to Indra by the Rgvedic Āryas and was mentioned by Gṛtsamada Šaunaka-Bhārgava, a very ancient ṛṣi, in the verse referred to above. Before this event took place, Kaśmīr valley would have been receiving a much larger supply of water than it could discharge by the then very narrow and shallow gorge, through which the very small Vitastā came out. The Satīsara or Kaśmīr would then be a very big lake, in fact a sea, surrounded by hills on almost all sides in the earliest period of the Rgvedic age. It must have remained very large, receiving the water of the various hill currents as mentioned at one place\(^{138}\), even after the Sindhu (Indus) changed its course, as only a small amount of water ran out through the narrow gorge of the Vitastā; till at some later period this gorge got widened and deepened by seismic distur-

138. i.e. VIII-100-9 (See footnote 128).
bances, described as the bursting of the Saṭīsara in the Nīlamata, which allowed much larger quantities of water to drain away, and making it fit for human habitation in due course.

The description of the Śaryaṇāvat, as given in the verse referred to above, fits in with Satīsara or Kaśmīr of later days perfectly. It was, therefore, this large lake or sea occupying the valley of Kaśmīr, that was known as the Śaryaṇāvat in Rgvedic days. It is very likely, this sea known in the Avesta as the Vouru Kaśa, and stretching towards the south from the foot of the holy mountain the Hara Berezaiti, Haraiti or Hara (probably the Haramukha of Kaśmīr), where Ahur Mazdā dwelt in the shining Garonmāna and where the white Haoma (Soma) or Gaokrena grew. It seems that, after being turned out of the valley of the Yamunā, the Yamas or Yimas, the ancestors of the Avestic Āryas (Irānians), settled in the north of Kaśmīr Valley. On account of this fact Dadhīcī Āharvāṇa was killed there and his head was found in the Śaryaṇāvat sea.

It may be added that the tradition of the four seas round the ancient home of the Āryas has been carried on in the story of Duṣyanta and Śakuntalā in the Mahābhārata. Śakuntalā, the rejected queen, warns her forgetful husband that their son (Bharata) will become the ruler of the country surrounded by the four seas and adorned with the king of mountains (Himālayas) after the death of his father, though disclaimed by him. The memories of these four seas has also been retained in the Kurukṣetra area by naming four tanks situated near the Aruṇā-Sarasvatī saṅgam between Pehoā and Urṇāi as the four seas. They are said to have been brought there by a Darbhi. This means that it was he who gave them that name and that they were not called by that name in earlier days. He must have, therefore, done so to retain the memory of the four seas after they had disappeared.

139. Ādi parva LXXIV.
THE MOUNTAINS

The mountains\(^1\) and hills\(^2\) are frequently mentioned. The snow-clad ones are also mentioned\(^3\). But so far as I could trace, the only ones mentioned by special names are those situated in the north, where the Soma plant grew in profusion and at its best.

*The Śaryaṇāvat Mountains.* These are mentioned in some verses\(^4\), which have already been quoted in connection with the sea of the same name. They were apparently the mountains which surrounded that sea *i.e.*, those surrounding the Kaśmir valley of modern times.

*The Suṣoma Mountains.* They are mentioned in a verse\(^5\) quoted before and should be those which gave rise to Suṣomā, *i.e.*, the modern Sohān river. This river rises in the Marī (Murree) hills to the south of the town of the same name. Suṣoma would, therefore, be the name of the range to the south of Marī and west of the Jhelum Valley.

*The Āṛjīka Mountains.* These, too, are mentioned in a verse\(^6\) after the above two ranges and in another\(^7\) after the mention of the Śaryaṇāvat sea in previous verse. They were the mountains that gave rise to the Āṛjikīyā *i.e.* the Hāro river of modern times. This river rises in the mountains north of Marī. Āṛjīka would, therefore, be the designation of the mountains in the north of that town.

According to some verses, all these three ranges were inhabited\(^8\) and

---

1. पर्वत.
2. गिरि.
3. हिमवन्त: X-121-4.
5. VIII-7-29. (See footnote 131).
6. VIII-7-29. (See footnote 131).
7. IX-113-2. (See Chapter 1, footnote 132).
8. पत्त्वानाम् IX-65-23.
visited by people in carts with lower front wheels,\(^9\) probably to fetch
Soma which grew over them in profusion as indicated by many verses.\(^{10}\)

The Mūjavat Mountains. In one verse Soma of Mūjavat is praised.\(^{11}\)
The Rgveda does not show where they were situated. But in Atharvaveda\(^{12}\), a tribe called the Mūjavats, who apparently gave their name to
the mountains, are mentioned in association with the Mahāvrṣas and
Gāndhārīs and on this side of the Bahlikas. I am unable to locate the
Mahāvrṣas on independent authority, but the Gāndhārīs are acknowledged
to have lived between the Jhelum river and the Sulemān ranges on both
sides of the Indus in early days, \(i.e\). before they were pushed further west,
first to the other side of the Indus and then across the Sulemān mountains
into the modern district of Kandhār in Afghanistan. The Bahlikas are
said to have lived to the north-west of the Hindūkush range round the
modern Balkh (Bactria). The Mūjavats would, thus, be living on the south-
eastern slopes of the Hindūkush, which would, therefore, be the Mūjavat
mountains.

The Sulemān ranges. The mountain ranges extending from the Mūjavat to the Parāvat sea do not appear to be mentioned by a proper
name. The fact that most of the rivers coming out of them to join the
Sindhu are mentioned by names\(^{13}\), proves that the Sulemān ranges too
must have been known. Quite likely, the original name of the range was
Sīlamān, derived from the same source from which the Sindhu got one of
its epithets \(viz\). the Sīlamāvatī and which got corrupt into Sulemān through
the Muslim conquerors. These are probably the same ranges which are
called Ādarsā in the old manuscripts of Vāsiṣṭha Dharma Sūtra\(^{14}\) and des-
cribed as the western boundary of Āryāvarta, though the word is changed
in later manuscripts into Adārśana, also known as Vīnaśana, \(i.e\). the place
where the Sarasvatī disappeared in the sands of Rājasthāna desert.

The Salt Range. This range of the northern Pañjāb, in spite of being a
noteworthy feature of the region, is apparently not mentioned in the
Rgveda. The fact that the Ārijikīyā (Hāro) united with the Suṣomā

---

9. वरुणिन्द्रक्रः नर: VIII-7-29.
10. VIII-64-11 and other verses already quoted.
11. सोमस्येव मौजवतस्य X-34-1.
(Sohān) is shown as an independent river\textsuperscript{15} like the Gaṅgā and other big rivers indicates that the salt range was not what it is now. It was very probably raised up by the same forces which upheaved the bed of the Parāvat sea. Its Greek name, Oromenus\textsuperscript{16}, shows that in later days it was known as Rauma Range, \textit{i.e.} pertaining to Ruşamas, a tribe mentioned in Rgveda\textsuperscript{17}.

\textit{The Himālayas.} The Rgvedic ḍīs must have known the Himālayas between the Śaryanāvat and the sources of the Gaṅgā. But there appears to be no mention of a special name denoting them or any part of them in the verses. The word ‘Himavantas’\textsuperscript{18} appears with the words ocean (\textit{samudra}) and Rasā (the land or plains), and they are all described as possessions of the Supreme Being\textsuperscript{19}. Therefore, the word ‘Himavantas’ means all snow-clad (high) mountains in general rather than any special group of mountains. In this sense only this word could be placed side by side with the ocean and the plains in general as the property of the Almighty.

\textit{The Northern Pāriyātras, Arbudāvalī or Arāvalī Range.} These ranges stretching from Khetaḍī in Rājasthāna through the Nārnaul, Bāval and Gurgāon areas of Pañjāb and the Alwar and Jaipur districts of Rājasthāna to the north of Delhi and between the Sarasvat sea in the south-west and the Yamunā in the north-east, are also not mentioned by any proper name in the Rk verses. But, as will be explained elsewhere, they must be the mountains in the caves of which the Paṇis (the followers of Vala) hid their own hoarded wealth and booty including the stōlen cows of the Aṅgirases\textsuperscript{20}. The legend of Agastya’s suppressing the growth of Vindhyaśas (which included the northern Pāriyātras) in the epics and the Purāṇas shows that in ancient days they were high mountains as mentioned in many verses\textsuperscript{21} in connection with the battle between the Indra-worshipping Aṅgirases and the Vala-worshipping Paṇis. This legend is nowhere alluded to in the Rgveda, but is described in full detail in the later literature. The seismic

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{15} आर्जिकीये महर्षुद्वा मुपोमया, (The former in the vocative and the latter in the instrumental case) X-75-5.
\item \textsuperscript{16} Cunningham: \textit{Ancient Geography of India}, map no. V.
\item \textsuperscript{17} V-30-12 to 15 and VIII-3-12 & 4-2.
\item \textsuperscript{18} हिमवत.
\item \textsuperscript{19} परस्मेम हिमवत्तो महिल्वा यस्त तस्मुद्र रसया सहहः: X-121-4.
\item \textsuperscript{20} X-108 and many other verses.
\end{itemize}
disturbances which disturbed them, must have, therefore, taken place at the end of the Rgvedic period and they must have been high mountains in that age and not hills as they are now. The fact that they prevented the Aryas from migrating south-eastwards in the Rgvedic age also points to the same conclusion. According to the Imperial Gazetteer of India 'the Aravali range, as it exists at present, is but the wreck of what must have been in former days a lofty chain of mountains, reduced to their present dimensions by subaerial denudation.'

With the existence of the Sarasvat and Arvâvat seas on either sides the rainfall in these mountains would have been far larger. Very probably their high peaks remained covered with snow for a good part, if not the whole, of the year, in ancient days and the rivers rising from them must have been perennial and fairly large.
THE DESERTS

The R̐k verses speak of deserts in plural number. One verse speaks of three desert regions together with eight points (i.e. directions) of the earth and seven rivers, thus indicating that there were in all three deserts in the country. There are references like 'passing over deserts', 'Parjanya made the deserts passable', 'like water brought to a man in the desert', 'overcame by thirst in the desert', 'bless us in paths and deserts', 'how many leagues is the desert?' etc., which show that men used to travel through deserts. In a verse rivers are said to cut their paths through deserts. These references show that the deserts were not very vast ones and were frequently crossed and the rivers cut their way through them to the sea or seas. In another verse, Agni is said to shine from the Parāvat sea across the desert. It shows that one of the deserts was situated near that sea. Through this desert rivers like the Sindhu, the Ārjīkīyā and the Marudvṛdhā cut their way.

The other two deserts cannot be definitely located, but very likely they were situated in the north and the east of the Sarasvat sea respectively through which the Paruṣṇī, the Vipāś and the Śutudrī on the one hand

1. धनव ।
2. ची धनव योजना I-35-8.
3. धन्वेव ताँ इह्ः III-45-1.
4. अकर्षेयत्वेऽति उ V-83-10.
5. जनं न ध्न्ववभिः यदाप: VI-34-4.
6. धन्वम हृणा समरीत IX-79-3.
8. धन्व च यक्त्वत्र च करी स्वतः वि योजना X-86-20.
and the Vīrapatnī, the Sarayu, the Sarasvatī, the Āpayā and the Dṛṣadvatī on the other cut their way. It would thus seem that the Parāvat and the Sarasvat seas, i.e. the ocean, had begun to recede south-westward even in the Rgvedic days.

There also are verses which probably refer to springs or wells in the deserts through the expressions like 'the beasts seeking their watery shares in waters in the deserts'\textsuperscript{11} and 'like a watering place in a desert'\textsuperscript{12}. On the other hand, there are expressions like 'deserts got flooded and water flowed'\textsuperscript{13}, 'Indra inundated thirsty desert plains'\textsuperscript{14}, 'plants spread over deserts'\textsuperscript{15}, 'rain falls over deserts'\textsuperscript{16} etc. which show that there was a good amount of rainfall even over the desert regions unlike the modern times. This must have been the result of the seas in the neighbourhood.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textsuperscript{11} अम्भमस्य भारं वन्यन्त्वा मृगयतो II-38-7.
  \item \textsuperscript{12} वन्यप्रव ग्रंपा X-4-1.
  \item \textsuperscript{13} आर्द्धवन्ति सरयन्त आप: IV-17-2.
  \item \textsuperscript{14} वन्यप्रव अगृणवत्त्वायार्य आप IV-19-7.
  \item \textsuperscript{15} वन्यप्रव ग्रंपाकृती: IV-33-7.
  \item \textsuperscript{16} अनु वन्यन्त यस्तिव वृष्टय: V-53-6.
\end{itemize}
PLACES

Out of the remaining, the most important geographical features are, of course, the rivers. But it is advisable to discuss and identify a few places mentioned by proper names in the Ṛgveda before taking up rivers.

The Mānuṣa and the Ilāyāspada. A verse says that Devavāta Bhārata, on an auspicious day\(^1\), placed Agni on Ilāyāspada, the best spot on the earth. Ilāyāspada, also called Ilāspada or Ilaspada in other verses, is again associated with Mānuṣa\(^2\) and is mentioned by itself in many places\(^3\). In the first verse, the benevolent Agni is said to have been established in the circle \(i.e.\) in the district of Mānuṣa\(^4\) and the oblations offered at Mānuṣa and Ilāspada are said to be his\(^5\). The first verse of the hymn speaks of Agni sitting fast at Ilaspada\(^6\). Another verse\(^7\) speaks of the people of Viśvāmitra (the ṛṣi of the hymn) \(i.e.\) the Bharatas having placed Agni at Ilāyāspada which is said to be the navel (\(i.e.\) the centre) of the Earth\(^8\). Other verses also describe Ilāspada or Ilāyāspada as the chief place where the Agni was worshipped\(^9\). There is another verse which, by speaking of the Bhrgus having brought Agni to the central point of the Earth

---

1. रेखवथे दिवीषि II III-23-4. (See Chapter I, footnote 87).
2. I-128-7.
3. \(i.e.\) I-128-1, III-29-4 and X-91-1 & 4.
4. मातुवृ वृजने I-128-7.
5. स हुव्या मातुष्वाणामिलाकृतानि पत्वते 1-128-7.
6. नि वदिलख्नि परिवीत 1-128-1.
7. \(i.e.\) III-29-4.
8. इलायास्थपा पदे बय नाम्फ वृषभम्ब विख्य II III-29-4.
9. इवमे दमे दमुना इपष्विलख्नि X-91-1 and तब मोनिमृत्विभमिलायास्थपे X-91-4.
and the centre of the world, obviously refers to the same place. It must apparently be the same place which is described as the navel of the Earth, and as the choicest or the best spot on the Earth, where Sudās Trāṣu is said to have performed his horse sacrifice after conquering his enemies in the east, west and north in the last verse. Scholars, who did not care to consult later and local traditions, have taken it to mean sacrificial altar, without pausing to think how an altar, which might be built anywhere, could be described as the navel of, or the best spot on the Earth. Das identifies a region (which he calls Ilā, but by which he means Ilāyāspada), with Kaśmīr on the strength of the story of Manu’s flood. But the story describes Ilā not as a region or a place but as a damsel who called herself the daughter of Manu.

A little consideration would prove that the Manu and Ilā of the Śatapatha story of the flood could not possibly be Manu (the father, i.e. the first regular king according to many verses) and Ilā (the first queen of Manuṣyas) who lived in the earliest known days of the Rgvedic period which closed, and not opened with the flood. Besides, the Rk verses do not show Ilā as the daughter of Manu. On the other hand, she is said to be ‘of Dakṣa’ (i.e. probably the daughter of Dakṣa). Obviously the Manu and Ilā of the story are figurative persons, representing the manhood and womanhood of the flooded country through the founders of their most important ruling dynasties viz. the Mānavas and the Aīlas. The Ilā of the Śatapatha could not, therefore, have any connection with the Ilā or Ilāyāspada of the Rgveda.

Mānuṣya has fared worse at the hands of scholars. They have translated it literally but without getting any sense out of it and altering the sense for the worse. The verse, in which it is prominently used, clearly shows that the district and, therefore, the town called Mānuṣa and the place named Ilāyāspada were situated in the regions of Drśadvatī, the Āpayā

10. यमेनिरो भृगवो विद्वेदवर्त नाभा पृथिव्या भूवक्ष्य माज्ञाना I-143-4.
13. III-23-4 quoted by Das in Rgvedic India 59 & 69.
14. इलामुक्षणमभवित्तिमान शासनी I-31-11.
15. दस्तेनिला III-27-10.
16. As mentioned in III-23-4. (see Chapter 1, footnote 87).
and the Sarasvatī, while this and another verse\(^\text{17}\) show that the latter was situated in the circle or district of the former. Mahābhārata\(^\text{18}\) describes these two places in the holy Kurukṣetra area and shows them exactly in the same regions as mentioned in Ṛgveda\(^\text{19}\).

A pilgrim going southwards from the Sarasvatī and Sītavana (Sīvan) passed through Mānuṣa. Āpagā (i.e. the Ṛgvedic Āpayā), Krośā (east of Mānuṣa), Brahmoudumbara (having the tank of Saptarṣis), Kedāra (of Kapilā), Kedāra (of Kapiṣṭhala), Saraka (with Rudra Koṭi) and Kūpa (or Kuṇḍa) and Ilāspada. Out of these above mentioned places Mānuṣa (now a village called Mānas) is situated 3½ miles north-west of Kaithal; the Āpayā or Āpagā tīrtha is still recognised at Gadli (Gadli of maps and Godli of Cunningham), between Mānas and Kaithal, Brahmoudumbara (with the Saptarṣi tank) and Kedāra (of Kapilā) at Silokheḍā two miles south-west of Kaithal; Kedāra (of Kapiṣṭhala) is identified with Kaithal and Saraka (having Rudra Koṭi), Kūpa (Kuṇḍa as well as Ilāspada) with Śergaḍh two miles to the south-east of Kaithal, in Karnāl district\(^\text{20}\). Mānuṣa and Ilāspada were thus situated on the right and left sides of the Āpayā about 5½ miles apart and in the tract between the Dṛṣadvatī and the Sarasvatī. The Mānuṣa, mentioned in the Mahābhārata is only a town or village, with a pond near it, in which people bathe to gain religious merit. The district of Mānuṣa\(^\text{21}\) would naturally include the area round about that town or village, i.e. between the middle courses of the Dṛṣadvatī and the Sarasvatī, almost in centre. The Mānuṣa town and the Ilāspada of the Ṛgveda were, therefore, and still are, situated in the south-eastern Sapta Saindhava between these two rivers (the former now represented by the Hānsi-Hisār branch of the western Yamunā canal) and on the two sides of the (now defunct) Āpayā; while the district of Mānuṣa included the middle parts of the valleys of these three rivers and later on came to be known as Brahmāvarta and Kurukṣetra.

---

17. स मानुषे बूजने शंतमो हितोत्ति यत्से पुणे विष्ठ्यः\(\text{Sūtra I-128-7.}\)
18. Vana parva LXXXIII.
19. III-23-4. (see Chapter 1, footnote 87).
21. मानुष बूजन
Places

Mānuṣa of Ṛgveda must have got its name from Manu (also known as Manuṣa), the first known regular king of the Ṛgvedic age. Obviously Manu must have founded the town of Mānuṣa and lived there as the king of the district 22 of that name.

Ilāspada, similarly, must have got its name from Ilā, the first known ancestress of the so-called Lunar dynasties. In the Mahābhārata period it was the name of a sacred site. It is so at present also. But, originally it must have been a town as it seems to have become the capital of the Bharatas later on. The town came to be known first as Saraka and then Šergaḍh.

Vivasvat Sadana. There are verses which speak of ‘Indra being praised’23 or finding pleasure in the ‘dwelling place of Vivasvat’ 24 while others mention Agni and other devas being established at the same place. 25 According to its first verse, verses in the X-75 were first recited in the ‘dwelling place of Vivasvat’. 26 It should be noted that the same expression ‘Vivasvat Sadana’ is used in all the five verses. It is, therefore, very likely that like Mānuṣa and Ilāspada it was the name of even an earlier town founded by Vivasvat, the father of Manu. Unfortunately there is no mention of it in the later literature. The place called ‘Sūrya’ between Kapilā and Go-bhavanā in the Mahābhārata 27 and still recognised at Sañjanā between Kalāyat and Gohanā about ten miles south-west from Kaithal may or may not represent the same site; Vivasvat (the Ṛgvedic chief) being mixed up with the ‘Sūrya’ (the sun) in mythology. There are verses 28 which, when read together, show that Agni was first established by Mātariśvan Bhārgava for Vivasvat at the ‘Navel of the Earth’ and the ‘Centre of the World’, i.e. the place which came to be known as Ilāspada later on. It is, therefore, more likely that ‘Vivasvat Sadana’ was the earlier name of Ilāspada and hence its omission in the later literature.

22. वृजन।
24. विवस्तत: सदन आ हि पिथ्रिघे सत्रासाहस्पितिर्महिन्न स्त्रुहि III-51-3.
25. यश्मदेवा विद्धे मादयले विवस्तत: सदने धारयले X-12-7.
26. i.e. X-75-1.
27. बोधाति सदने विवस्तत: X-75-1.
28. Vana parva LXXXIII.
29. I-143-4 as quoted in footnote 10 and त्वमणे प्रभयो मातरिण्यन आविर्भव सुकुस्या विवस्तते I-31-3.
**Bhārati.** The Āṇā hymns\(^{30}\) of the various clans of the Brāhmaṇas speak of three Devis named Bhārati, also known as Mahī (the Great), Iḷā and Sarasvatī. Scholars like Pischel have held that Mahī was a separate Devī, independent of Bhārati. But it is clear from a hymn\(^{31}\) that Mahī and Bhārati were the names of one and the same Devī. The ṛśi mentions all the four names but he describes them as the ‘three Devīs’\(^{32}\). There are hymns which omit Bhārati but mention Mahī\(^{33}\). This suggests that the latter must be another name of the former, and must have been used as an epithet and not as the name of the fourth Devī in other hymns\(^{34}\). Bhārati is given the first place by the Jamadagnis (original Bṛgus), the Aṅgirases, the Vasiṣṭhas, the Kaśyapas, the Agastyas and the Viśvāmitras (or Kuśikas) and the last place by Śunakas (adopted Bṛgus), the Atris and the Kaṇvas (adopted Aṅgirases), while the Vadhyrāśivas (originally Bharatas but adopted amongst Bṛgus) do not mention her by name. Iḷā is given the place of honour by the Atris and the Kaṇvas, the second place by the Jamadagnis, the Śunakas, the Aṅgirases, the Vasiṣṭhas, the Agastyas and the Viśvāmitras, the third place by the Kaśyapas and is the only one mentioned by name by the Vadhyrāśivas. Sarasvatī is accorded the first place by the Śunakas, the second by the Kaśyapas, the Atris and the Kaṇvas, the last by the Jamadagnis, the Aṅgirases, the Vasiṣṭhas, the Agastyas and the Viśvāmitras; and is not mentioned by name by the Vadhyrāśivas. Though the Vadhyrāśivas mention only Iḷā by name, yet they too address all the three Devīs\(^{35}\). Their being Bharatas by origin may have something to do with the solitary exception from the rule. From the above it is clear that Bhārati was the most important of these three Devīs. She is also mentioned in some other verses\(^{35A}\) with Iḷā, Sarasvatī and other Devas and Devīs, and is said to be hundred winters old\(^{36A}\).

---

31. *i.e.* IX-5.
32. तिर्जन देवी: ।
33. I-13 and V-5.
34. *i.e.* in 1-142 and IX-5.
35. तिर्जन देवीरुः । (See footnote 37)
35A. *i.e.* 1-22-10 and 11-1-11.
36. बालिका in I-22-10 and II-1-11.
36A. III-62-3
three Devis mentioned in one verse\textsuperscript{37} and three ladies of waters in another\textsuperscript{38}, are also supposed to be the same three deities.

The most ancient place held sacred to Bhārati and called after her is the Bhārati tīrtha of Kopar or Koer in the middle of Kurukṣetra, 22 miles east of Kaithal and 12 miles south-south-west of Thānesar. Cunningham has mentioned Paṁch Tīrthī (five holy spots) at Kopar\textsuperscript{39} but has not given their details. Bhārati tīrtha is one of them.

If the interpretation of the verse\textsuperscript{40} as given by scholars is correct, it would appear that Bhārati, Ilā and Sarasvatī were connected with collections of water. The place held sacred to Bhārati at Kopar and to Ilā at Ilāspada in Śṛgadā are connected with bathing places, while Sarasvatī is the deified river. Thus the description of these Devis as given in this verse fits in with the sites still held sacred to them.

Obviously Bhārati was the household Devī\textsuperscript{41} of the Bharatas and her location at Kopar indicates their origin from that place.

Ilā. Ilā, apparently the household Devī of the Ailas (including the Yadus, the Turvaśas (or Turvaśus), the Anus, the Druhyus, the Pūrus and their offshoots), would naturally be located at Ilāspada described above and not in Kaśmīr, as suggested by Das. It may be added that, as already shown, Kaśmīr valley was occupied by Śaryaṇāvat sea in the Rgvedic age.

Sarasvatī. Sarasvatī would be somewhere on the banks of the river of that name, probably in its upper valley near the Guṅgū, the Sinīvālī, the Rākā and the Brhaddiva, prayed to by Grtsamada Šaunuka\textsuperscript{42} and Atri\textsuperscript{43}. The site sacred to her might have been probably located at Sārasvata (\textit{i.e.} of Sarasvatī) in the north-east of Thānesar, as Sarasvatī is said to have performed austerities there\textsuperscript{44}. She was, very likely, the household Devī of all the leading families of the Sarasvatī basin excepting the Bharatas and Ailas.

\textsuperscript{37} तिछो देवीय II-35-5.
\textsuperscript{38} निष्णादिस्तितो भप्पा III-56-5.
\textsuperscript{39} Archaeological Survey of India Report, vol. XIV, p. 100.
\textsuperscript{40} श्री गयेश्वर सितविद्रात: कवीनामूख जिमाता विद्येश्य स्त्रादृत्।
\textsuperscript{41} \textit{वर्णशास्त्र} सितविद्रात: कवीनामूख जिमाता विद्येश्य स्त्रादृत्।
\textsuperscript{42} तिछो देवी विद्येश्य स्त्रादृत्।
\textsuperscript{43} II-32.
\textsuperscript{44} Archaeological Survey of India Report, vol. XIV, p. 106.
The household Devīs of the ruling families would naturally become the tribal Devīs of the tribes ruled over by the families. That could be the only possible cause of their being prayed to in the Āpṛī hymns of the various clans of the Brāhmaṇas. It may be added that the two other ‘adopted’ Bhṛgus viz. the Vainyas and Vaitahavyas and all the ‘adopted’ Aṅgirases with the exception of the Kaṇvas accept the two hymns respectively as their Āpṛī hymns⁴⁵. All the Brāhmaṇas of the whole of India pray to the three tribal Devīs of the south-eastern Sapta Saindhava only. The Devīs of the other parts of the country are not mentioned in the Āpṛī hymns. They are not even traceable in the existing verses. This shows that all the Brāhmaṇas of India, who claim to be the members of one or the other of these 18 clans, must have originated from the Sarasvatī basin. This in its turn proves that the scholars who hold that what they suppose to be the oldest maṇḍalas viz. the family maṇḍalas from II to VII) were composed in the north-west, are absolutely wrong; unless it is proved that all the Āpṛī hymns are of such a late origin that the descendants of the emigrants had completely forgotten all about the movements of their ancestors when they were composed. It may be added that these hymns are ascribed to very early ancestors of the various clans, those of the Vasiṣṭhas, Agastyas, and Viśvāmitras to the original founders and of the majority of the Bhṛgus⁴⁶ to Jamadagni and his son Rāma, the former of whom is mentioned by Viśvāmitra⁴⁷ and by Vasiṣṭha⁴⁸ in two of the family books.

---

⁴⁵. i.e. X-110 and I-142.
⁴⁶. viz. X-110.
⁴⁸. i.e. in VII-96-3.
THE RIVERS

The best mentioned features of the country are rivers. A large number of them are mentioned by special names.

In one verse the ṛṣi Agastya, whose progeny provided the most adventurous explorers in later days, speaks of ninety-nine rivers and claims to have secured the names of all of them. But unfortunately he does not mention them, nor are they enumerated anywhere else. The ṛṣi of another verse also speaks of ninety-nine flowing rivers. In a verse Gotama Rāhugaṇa Āṅgiras speaks of about ninety navigable rivers, but he too does not enumerate them. In another verse Agastya first probably speaks of twenty-one beautiful rivers and then of seven main rivers. Sindhuksit Praiyamedha speaks of twenty-eight rivers, of which Sindhu is said to be the mightiest. But, here again, the hymn, as it is, gives only nineteen names including the Sindhu and even if the two rivers, mentioned in a spurious verse interpolated between the fifth and the sixth verses in some manuscripts, be added, the number remains twenty-one. Some scholars have tried to read seven more names in the seventh and eighth verses. But a careful study of the verses shows that words, which have been taken to be the names of the rivers, are either descriptive adjectives or the local epithets of the Sindhu which is the river praised in them. In certain other verses the ṛṣis speak

1. नवानां नवतीनां विषस्य रोपुष्पीणाम्। सर्वसामग्रभं नामार्हे I-191-13.
2. नव च दशस्थो च सवत: I-32-14.
3. नवति नाव्या अरु I-80-8.
4. त्रि सप्त मयूरः (literally twenty-one peahens) I-191-14.
5. सप्त स्नसारो (literally seven sisters) I-191-14.
6. सप्तसप्त नेत्रा X-75-1.
of twenty-one rivers, but they, too, do not supply the names of all of them. The most frequently used term is, however, 'the Seven Rivers'.

It would thus appear that among the ninety-nine rivers, twenty-eight or twenty-one were fairly large. Among these seven were main. It is on account of its seven main rivers that the country had been called Sapat Saimhava (Avestic Hapta Hendava). Unfortunately the names of these seven rivers are nowhere clearly stated. Scholars have, of course, made guesses about them; but, curiously enough, without seeking the help of either the Rgveda itself or later literature. Many of them thought that they were the five present rivers of the Pañjāb and the Indus and the Sarasvatī. Others, probably too much obsessed with the theory of the Ārya invasion from the north-west and unable to conceive that the now very insignificant Sarasvatī could ever have been big enough to deserve that honour, have substituted the Kubhā in its place and have suggested that the mighty Sarasvatī of the Rgveda was either the Sindhu or some other large river. Had they cared to know the size of the Sarasvatī either from the Mahābhārata or from the old beds of the river itself, they would have realised how palpably wrong they were. In fact Sarasvatī was a much bigger and far more important river of the country than the Kubhā and there is no justification to replace it by the latter with an ominous name among the seven most important rivers of the country. As will be explained below, a verse shows the Vitastā (the Jhelum) and the Asiknī (which will be identified in its proper place with the modern Aik) as the tributaries of the Marudvīrdhā (the Cenāb) and the Paruṣṇī (the Rāvī) as that of the Sutudrī (the Satluj). The Biās (the Rgvedic Vipāś) is not at all mentioned in that verse and its identification with the Ārjikīyā is incorrect and un-

7. विरसिनन नियुभिः सत्तहमात्तुं ि: I-34-8, नियुभिः ि: सात, IX-86-21 and ि: सप्त वाता नवो X-64-8.

8. i.e. सप्त नियुभि, नियुभिः सप्तसिंहरू, सप्त महानी, नब: सप्त, सप्त सवसार:, सप्तसिंहरू मातूर, सप्तबर्मिः, सप्त बिल्लूः, सप्त लबो, सप्त सिंहूः, सप्त-सिंहय, माता.....सप्तसिंहय, and सप्त आयो etc. in I-32-12, 34-8, 35-8, 71-7, 102-2, 141-2, 164-3, 191-14; II-12-3; III-1-4; IV-28-1; V-43-1, VI-7-6; VII-18-24 and 67-8; VIII-24-27, 41-2 & 9, 69-12, & 96-1; IX-66-6 and 92-4 and X-43-3, 49-9, 67-12 and 104-8.

9. इम म गने यमुने सरस्वति श्रुचै स्तोत्तर सच्चतव पर्ययाः। असितनयां महग्ने
वितस्त-वार्त्थमस्य स्युस्मियाः॥ X-75-5.
warranted, in spite of Yāska. In any case, some verses\(^{10}\) show it as a tributary of the Satluj. Thus out of the modern five large rivers of the Pañjāb three viz. the Bīās, the Rāvī and the Jhelum were not the main rivers but mere tributaries. Besides, the Vitastā (Jhelum) was probably a very small river in the Rgvedic age as indicated by its name. One verse speaks of seven regions of the Earth\(^{11}\); and another of seven regions\(^{12}\). In still another verse Nābhāka Kāṇva, probably a rṣi of the later period of the Rgvedic age after the Mānava Bharatas had established their suzerainty over the whole of Sapta Saindhava, mentions seven Mānuṣas of the rivers of the world\(^{13}\). In yet another verse Indra claims to have the ‘Seven Rivers’ as his special domain, though he lorded over all the rivers of the Earth\(^{14}\). It may be that the Rgvedic rṣis had some knowledge of the world outside their own country ‘of Seven Rivers’ and imagined it to be divided into seven countries occupied by seven different nations ruled by the descendants of Manu like the seven dominions (Karśvairya) of the Avesta. But very probably they got this idea of dividing the world into seven countries from the fact that their own land was divided into seven geographical divisions by the seven main rivers. It may also be that the high-sounding ‘Viśva’ and ‘Prthivī’ in fact meant their own country and the rivers meant the rivers—other than the main seven—of their own country\(^{15}\). Be as it may, in both cases the seven main rivers were very probably independent rivers running from the mountains like the Sarasvatī\(^{16}\) and Śutudrī\(^{17}\) direct to the sea\(^{18}\) through the whole breadth of the country dividing it into seven physical divisions and seven groups of peoples. This is further supported by the expression ‘the seven rivers going to the

---

10. III-33 and others.
12. सत धामानि X-122-3.
15. As the expression पृविष्यां तीरा indicates.
16. एकाचेततसरस्वती नदीनां शुचिरावानी विरिमाय त्रस्मु दुरस्त्रात्। रायशचेषतती मुकनस्य मूर्तियों दमो दुरहे ताल्लुकाय। VII-95-2.
17. इतरविष्णुन तस्य सम्बं दिशामानेन ब्रह्मा समुद्रं रघुेवत यतः। समारामणे धारितेम: पिन्यमाने जन्या वामनोदयमेति घुष्ट्रे। III-33-2.
18. समुद्र।
Ocean\textsuperscript{19}. As already suggested, there are verses\textsuperscript{20} which probably also express the same idea though they do not mention the number ‘Seven’. The seven main rivers were, thus, independent ones, falling directly into the seas and not tributaries of other rivers. Three of the five modern rivers of the Pañjāb could not, therefore, have been among the seven main rivers.

A verse reads ‘O! Gaṅgā, O! Yamunā, O! Sarasvati, O! Śutudrī with the Paruṣṇī accept my laud. O! Marudvṛdhā with the Asiknī and the Vitastā and O! Ārjikīyā with the Suṣomā listen’.\textsuperscript{21} Scholars have for some unknown reasons read the Paruṣṇī in the vocative case, but the expression used is Paruṣṇyā in the instrumental and not in vocative case. Besides, there is the evidence of an old bed (to be described in its proper place) which indicates that Paruṣṇī was at one time a tributary of the Śutudrī. There is thus no reason to mistranslate the expression. The verse following the above mentioned one is addressed to the Sindhu\textsuperscript{22}, which is described as going forward to unite with several other rivers one after another. The rivers addressed in the two verses are the Gaṅgā, the Yamunā, the Sarasvati, the Śutudrī, the Marudvṛdhā, the Ārjikīyā and the Sindhu, in all seven. The others are shown as tributaries of some of them. From the verses quoted above we know that the third and the fourth were independent rivers. There can be no doubt that the first and the last were independent. The second, the fifth and the sixth being treated in the same way as the other four and differently from the rest, must also be taken as independent rivers. Thus these seven were the chief rivers of the country.

But as explained above, the total number of rivers was much larger. I shall discuss them from south-east to north-west as far as possible keeping in line with the practice of the ṛṣis.

Section I

The First Group

\textit{The Gaṅgā}. The Gaṅgā is mentioned twice, once with other rivers indicating that it was considered to be one of the main rivers

\begin{itemize}
  \item 19. 1-71-7 (see Chapter I, footnote 39).
  \item 20. I-190-7, VI-19-5 and VIII-6-4 & 35 & 92-2.
  \item 21. X-75-5 (see footnote 9).
  \item 22. तं सिहवो X-75-6.
\end{itemize}
of the country\textsuperscript{23}, and at the other place, in association with the Panis\textsuperscript{24}. The fact that it is specially referred to as having high banks\textsuperscript{25}, probably indicates that it joined the Arvāvat sea soon after leaving the foothills, \textit{i. e.} before reaching the plains where it could have only low banks. As explained before, this sea prevented the Āryas from crossing the Gaṅgā and migrating eastward. To be so complete a barrier, the sea must have stretched right up to the Himālayas. The Gaṅgā must have, therefore, joined it from the north-west somewhere well above Hastināpur.

There is not even one separate verse in praise of Gaṅgā. This proves that it did not command the same love and reverence in the Rgvedic age, as it acquired later. The obvious reason for this is that it was not situated in the cradle of the Rgvedic culture and religion but further away on the eastern border, its valley being occupied by the non-Indra-worshipping Panis who were votaries of Vala.

2. \textit{The Yamunā}. It is mentioned thrice, at one place with other rivers indicating that it was also one of the main rivers\textsuperscript{26}, at another place in connection with the war of Sudās Trṣu against the Ajas, the Śigrus and the Yakṣus\textsuperscript{27} and at the third place suggesting that its valley was even then famous for cattle and horses\textsuperscript{28}. Like the Gaṅgā it must have also had a short course joining the Arvāvat sea independently, probably somewhere near Pāṇīpat (Paṇī Prastha), a very ancient town (as indicated by the high mounds on which it is partly situated) in the vicinity of, and very likely connected with, the Panis as suggested by its name.

The Yamunā appears to have run a more westerly course in early days, though the one marked by Cunningham is not quite correct\textsuperscript{29}. Apparently he has confused the old beds of the ancient Drśadvatī and the Yamunā, which ran very close to each other from about the level of

\textsuperscript{23} X-75-5. (see footnote 9).
\textsuperscript{24} VI-45-31.
\textsuperscript{25} ऋ:\ कच्छो नगाइयः। VI-45-31.
\textsuperscript{26} X-75-5. (see footnote 9).
\textsuperscript{27} अवविद्वेद यमुना तुसंवस्य प्रात्र भैदं सर्वताता मुपायत्। अजासश्च शिर्यायो मथावस्य बलिः शीर्षाणि जाधूरक्ष्यानि॥ VII-18-19.
\textsuperscript{28} सप्त ये सप्त शाकिन एकमेका शता द्वुः। यमुनायामिष्ठ श्रुतमुद्राभ्य गव्य्य मूजे नि राजो बलव्य मूजे॥ V-52-17.
\textsuperscript{29} Cunningham: \textit{Ancient Geography of India}, map no. X.
Devadhar to about that of Mūṇak. As far as one can judge from the evidence of old maps, published before the upper channel of the western Yamunā canal was straightened out, the two rivers appear to have come close at a place about three miles south-east of Chacharaulī town, but diverged again immediately after. The Drṣadvatī continued south-west towards old Śrughna (now represented mostly by Būḍiyā) while the Yamunā turned due south along Khidrī and Fatehaqālī and ran into the present channel at Ghāziuddīnpur. It then again ran south-westwards, almost parallel to the Drṣadvatī, the two again coming about two miles close to each other near old Śrughna. The Yamunā passed Karnāl few miles in the east, then Gharaunḍā, then went to the west of Pānīpat and Sonīpat and rejoined the modern bed a few miles above Delhi. In the days of Fīroz Shāh Tughluq, a channel was drawn from the old bed of the Yamunā near Shāhjahānpur village and joined to the Drṣadvatī about three miles east of Chacharaulī town and again from Drṣadvatī three miles east of Mūṇak and joined to the old course of the Yamunā about four miles above Pānīpat to form the Royal canal. This is confirmed by Cunningham⁰⁰, showing the Drṣadvatī (though not named) to rise from nowhere about the level of Mūṇak and at once divided into two branches. One branch runs south-west and is joined one after another by the two branches of what appears to be the (lower) Cataṅg, thus forming a rough triangle. The other branch runs south and joins the old course of the Yamunā a little below the level of Sonīpat. Another map of Cunningham⁰¹, however, shows the Drṣadvatī more correctly though it gives only a part of its course.

A good part, though straightened out of the old course of the Yamunā, is now occupied by the Delhi branch of the Western Yamunā Canal. The course discussed above, of course, belongs to comparatively recent days, but is the oldest one now traceable.

3. Āsmanvatī. The Asmanvatī is wrongly supposed to be another name of the Drṣadvatī⁰² only because both the names mean 'the stony'. But synonymity does not necessarily imply that both are one and the same river. The verse shows one side of the river inauspicious and bringing no gains,

---

30. Cunningham : Ancient Geography of India, map no. X.
31. Map no. XIV.
32. X-53-8,
while the other is shown as the reverse of it. This description could never have fitted the Drṣadvatī as would be apparent when it is identified later on. There is a river still called Aśmī or Assan, which rises near Mahāsū in the Śimlā range and joins the Giri Gaṅgā, which in its turn falls into the Yamunā. There is another tributary of the Yamunā known as Āsan, which rises near Masūrī (Mussoorie) and Dehrā Dūn and runs westwards between two ranges of the Śivālikas and joins that river near Pānvatā. Situated as these tributaries are, their beds would always be covered with stones. The low hills and the plains in their south will always be more profitable and comfortable to live in than the high mountains in the north, specially in the Rgvedic age with its severer and longer winters. Their present names could easily be corruptions of Aśman, more so of the former, though the description is more fitted to the latter. It is, therefore, more reasonable to identify one of these rivers with the Aśmanvatī of the Rgveda.

These three rivers viz. the Gaṅgā, the Yamunā, and the Aśmanvatī formed the easternmost group of the rivers of Sapta Saindhava.

Section II

The Second Group

The (South-eastern) Rasā. Some eminent but baffled scholars, who could not interpret the relevant verses rationally, have described the Rasā as a mythical river. The fact is that there is nothing mythical about the river. The scholars came to the incorrect conclusion because the word ‘Rasā’ besides being the proper name of two different rivers situated near the two ends of the country, also means dry land as well as the Earth in general. One verse mentions the river of this name between the Śusartu and the Śvetī and joining the Sindhu while another verse mentions it before the Anitabhā, the Kubhā, the Krumu and the Sindhu. The Rasā of these two verses is clearly a north-western tributary of the Indus, which

33. अरमन्तती रीयते सं रत्तम्वुमुतिष्ठत प्र तत्तत सर्वायः। बन्ध ज्ञाने वेष समधिवेशवा: । विशालयमुत्तरमामिब्वाजार्णं X-53-8.

34. तुष्टमया प्रवर्ते यातवे सं: सुस्तव्य रसया लेव्या तया। तव सत्तमो कुम्भया यो मनोती । कुमुः भेद्यान्वा सर्वं यात्मराजस्वव।। X-75-6.

35. मा कु रसावितभा कुम्भ क्रुमुः व: तिर्मण्डि रीमद। मा कः परि त्यसर्य। । पुरिरिष्यमेति हसुम्यमस्वर्यवः।। V-53-9.
will in due course be shown to be no other than the small river now called the Taṅgir.

As explained previously, a verse\(^{36}\) describes the snow-clad *i.e.*, high mountains, the ocean and the Rasā as the possessions of the Supreme Being. A river, specially a small one, cannot be placed side by side with the high mountains and the ocean and described as the possession of the Supreme Being along with them. The ‘Rasā’ in this verse more appropriately means the dry and more level lands of the plains between the high mountains and ocean. In another verse, the Rasā is said to go round the Viṣṭap\(^{37}\); the latter meaning the Universe, the Sun or the world in general. A river would not be described as going round any of these three by any \(mṛn\) in his senses. Unless we are not prepared to credit Medhyātithi Kāṇva with ordinary commonsense, we must translate the Rasā in this verse as the Earth and Viṣṭap as the sun and understand the \(rṣi\) as alluding to the Earth’s motion round the sun. It may, of course, startle savants of a certain school of thought but quite evidently it is a more sensible interpretation than speaking of a river named Rasā going round the world, specially when the river so honoured is neither the Sarasvatī, the most sacred and revered, nor the Sindhu, the biggest river of the country. We must consider the facts that in a verse the heaven and the Earth are said to be like bowls united\(^{38}\) and in another they are described as wheels\(^{39}\). Both indicate the idea of roundness and the former that of a hemisphere. It is hard to believe that the Earth could be imagined as a bowl with its concavity towards the heaven by people who could leave a literature like the Rgveda, specially in view of the two verses already quoted in Chapter One,\(^{40}\) which speak of the Aśvins going round the seas and resting on the shore of seas probably on the other side of the world at night. The Rasā in these two verses must, therefore, mean the dry plains of the Earth and the Earth itself respectively. The only other possible explanation of Rasā\(^{41}\)

---

36. यस्येमेह हिमकल्लो महित्वा यत्य समुद्रं रस्यासि सहह्रु:। यस्येमः प्रदिष्टो यस्य बाहुः कर्मै देवाय हृषिः विबेयः || X-121-4.

37. तरा रसेव विष्टफम् IX-41-6.

38. मही समर्चन्त्वा समीयी उभेते अस्य वसुना न्युष्टे III-55-20.

39. यो अरोपेव चक्रित श्वसिनिभवत्तस्तम्भ पृथिविमुग्द दाम् X-89-4.

40. I-180-1 & 46-8 (see Chapter I, footnote 32 and 33).

41. परि ण: शरमयत्वा धारया सोम विष्वत्। सरा रसेव विष्टफम् || IX-41-6.
could be the Milky Way, which might be imagined to go round the world. In any case it has no connection with terrestrial streams.

The ṛṣi of one section in a verse speaks of the chariot of the Aśvins reaching the heaven after coming up from a sea. The same ṛṣi in the next verse speaks of the sea watering the horses of Aśvins with Rasā. The text has already been quoted in connection with the Arvāvat sea. The Rasā of this verse would, therefore, be a river in the south-east, that joined the Arvāvat sea where the Aśvins appeared to rise. In one verse, the ṛṣi Atri Bhauma, the founder of the Ātreya clan of the Brāhmaṇas, prays to the great mother Rasā for irrigation, i.e. watering of land. In the fifth verse of the same hymn he speaks of himself as the high priest of an Ausīja, i.e. a king of the Uṣijas (a division of the Āngirases before they adopted the priestly profession). The Uṣijas ruled in the south-east and their ancestors, led by Brāhaspati Āngirasa, had attacked and defeated Paṇis, living on the other side of the Rasā in mountainous regions as mentioned in many verses. In another verse Śyāvāśva Ātreya, an early ancestor of the clan, speaks of the Maruts having given a charger to Bharata, while in another verse of the same maṇḍala Sutambhara Ātreya speaks of Agni shining splendidly for the Bharatas. This Bharata and his descendants, the earlier Bharatas, were also kings of the south-east. In their maṇḍala (the sixth) the Bhāradvājas, who were descendants of Bhāradvāja, son of Brāhaspati, and cousins of the Uṣijas, and had later on become priests, speak a lot about the Bharatas and the Sarasvatī. It would thus appear that the great ṛṣi Atri lived in the south-east.

So far as I could find, the notorious and universally hated Paṇis are mentioned in the fifth maṇḍala (of the Atris) only twice while all the other maṇḍalas mention them more or less frequently. The comparative silence of the Atris about them cannot be without significance. The most likely inference is that the earlier ancestors of the Atris were connected with

42. i.e. of IV-43.
43. IV-43-5. (See Chapter I, footnote 80).
44. IV-43-6. (See Chapter I, footnote 81).
45. विषम्तौ माता मही रसा V-41-15.
46. अविष्कर्ष्य होता V-41-5.
47. मरताय वाज V-54-14.
48. भरतेम्य V-11-1.
the Paṇis in a friendly manner and that is the reason why they did not advertise the latter’s failing as the others did. This idea is supported by a verse which describes the Paṇis as forsaken by Atris\(^50\). Atri must have, therefore, been connected with the Paṇis in his earlier life, i.e. before he became the priest of the Auśijas, their conquerors. The association of the Paṇis with the Gaṅgā\(^51\) has already been mentioned and the fact that they used to live in the extreme south-east of Sapta Saindhava will be established elsewhere. The Rasā prayed to by Atris cannot, therefore, be the Taṅgīr of the north-west, but must be a river in the south-east. In one verse, Kutsa, as proved by the Pravara ṛṣis (the most important Ṛgvedic ṛṣi ancestor of the Kutsas), was an Aikṣavāku king of the south-east before he became a ṛṣi and was adopted in the Āngiras clan, describes Rasā as flooded by the Aśvin\(^52\). The Rasā of this verse would also be a river of south-east. Finally Saramā, the she-hound of Bṛhaspati, and, of course, of Indra\(^53\) is said to have faced the dangers of crossing the waters of the Rasā to reach the place, where the Paṇis had hidden the cattle of Bṛhaspati as well as their own wealth and other booty in the rock-paved caves of mountains in a lonely spot, which led far away to distant places and which was well guarded by the Paṇis\(^54\). The Paṇis, living on the banks of the Gaṅgā and the shore of the Arvāvat sea, are more likely to have their retreats and conceal their wealth and booty in the caves of the south-eastern mountains viz, the northern Pāriyātras, rather than those of the far distant north-western ranges across the Taṅgīr. The Rasā of this verse would also, therefore, be a river situated in the south-east amongst and near the northern Pāriyātras, the crossing of which led one to dangerous and lonely

50. यज्ञिः VI-51-14.
51. अधि ब्रुःपणीता वर्षिणं मूर्खस्यात्। उहः कष्टे न गाइः। VI-45-31.
52. रसां होदोसन:। धिरस्वचः। I-112-12.
53. इत्स्वादिः इवराक्षसो बैष्ट्यी विद्यासरम तत्वाय वा
     बृहस्पतिभिः।
8. सुस्वतिभिः। विद्यास:। समुस्वतिभिः। विवाहं तत:। I-62-3.
54. किमिक्रियाति सर्वा प्रेदमानां हूरे क्षत्र्यं जमुनिः। परार्यः
     कांमेश्च:। का परिक्रमा तयारं रसायं अतः। पयांशिः।
     इत्स्व इत्स्व अविवाहितता चराति न केवल एक। इत्स्व इत्स्वातिः। इत्स्व इत्स्वातिः।
     अतिक्रान्तिः मिथ्याः तत्वावत्त्या। रसायं अतः पयांशिः।
     अयं निर्मिः। सर्व:। अदित्रीयाः। सम्भवित्वा। सम्भवित्वा। सम्भवित्वा।
     रक्षणं तं पर्यायं वे सुगंधं रेकु पद्मलक्ष्मी जगत्तः।
     X-108-1, 2, 7.
places and through which one could go to such far away and distant places, as the Jambūdvipa or the modern South-eastern India. At present there is the dry bed of the seasonal stream, called the Sāhbī (Sāyabī or Sāvī) which —more than any other river—fits in with the above description. It rises in the northern Pāriyātras near Ajītgaḍh just south of Torāvāṭi in Jaipur territory and runs north-eastwards. It is first joined near Behroḍ by the Sotā, which rises a little further north near Ciplatā in Torāvāṭi; then near Bijvāḍ by the Bān-gaṅgā, which rises in Bānsur area in the east; and still further in Paṭaudī territory by the Indori, which rises in the east of Tāvḍū. These three are also seasonal streams at present. The united bed then passes between Rivāḍī (Rewari) and Dhārūheḍā, then runs almost due north past Khatāvli, Jāṭauli and Karaulā and is now lost near Dāḍrī in Jhajjar Tehsīl. Older maps and map No. X in Cunningham’s Ancient Geography of India show it as running north-westwards from Jāṭauli and joining the Kṛṣṇāvati near Kāṅṇī. The combined stream is then shown as going north up to about half way between Bilocpur and Mārot and then turning eastwards and joining the lake of Jahāṅgīrpur. From this lake a stream is shown running southeast and joining the main marsh of Najaṅgaḍh in more recent maps. One map shows the lakes and marshes from Jahāṅgīrpur to Najaṅgaḍh as one large lake. Another map does not show the lake, but shows the river as joining the Yamunā directly. This, of course, is wrong. The Sāhbī still after very heavy rains over its catchment area joins the Najaṅgaḍh lake by turning eastwards from Dāḍrī though this is now a rare occurrence.

This river and its affluents should have been fairly large and permanent streams in the Rgvedic age, as, then the northern Pāriyātras were high mountains and the Arvāvat and Sarasvat seas caused a much heavier rainfall and probably also snowfall over them. It is this river i.e. the south-eastern Rasā which was very probably the Rasā of many verses. It joined the Arvāvat sea probably after a very short course out of the northern Pāriyātras.

The Ahāsumati. This river, mentioned in many verses in connection with a tribe led by Drapsa of the Kṛṣṇa dynasty, is generally

55. Ancient Geography of India, map no. X.
56. Ancient Geography of India, map no. I.
58. VIII-96-13 to 15.
believed to be the same as the Yamunā. So far as I could find there is no warrant, whatsoever, for this belief.

There is the dry bed of a river which rises in the northern Pāriyātras five miles east of Mānvaḍā and Nīm Kā Thānā in Torāvāṭī area. It is shown in the modern maps first going north-north-west and, then, passing through one mile east of Nārnaul, going north-eastwards and finally ending near Ḍahīnā in Rivāḍī tehsīl. Maps published towards the close of the last century show it as going a few miles further north-east and ending near Kosli railway station. Still earlier maps and map No. X in Cunningham’s Ancient Geography of India trace it still further in the same direction and as joining the Sāhī near Kāsīnī. After very heavy rains it still crosses the railway line, often damaging it near Nāṅgal Paṭhānī and falls into the lake of Najaḍgaḍh. Its correct name is Krṣṇāvatī, by which it is still designated near Nārnaul in modern maps. But above and below that area, it is named Kasāvantī and Kasāvatī respectively. These words are only corrupt forms of Krṣṇāvatī.

There is also a bigger dry bed of another seasonal stream which, too, rises in the northern Pāriyātras near Caunī Torāvāṭī a few miles north of Krṣṇāvatī. It is shown running north-eastwards past Basai (in Torāvāṭī), Ḏhoṣī (Cyavanāśrama) and Kānauḍ (in Mahindargaḍh area) in modern maps. Older maps trace its course further north beyond Māṇḍolā almost up to the hills of Kaliānā. It is difficult to understand why it has been ignored by Cunningham69. In older days it used to flow quite frequently up to Carkhi-Dāḍrī. After very heavy rains it used to turn eastwards and is known to have occasionally reached Chūchakvās in Jhajjar Tehsīl. It is still remembered to have run further east in more ancient days and fallen into the lake of Najaḍgaḍh. But before it did so it used to unite near Mārot with a stream, coming from the north and now called the (lower) Naī, then turn southwards and join the combined stream of Krṣṇāvatī and the Sāhī between Mārot and Bilocpur. It is now known as the Duhān. It is this river that is called the Vadhūsarā in the Mahā-bhārata and is said to have originated from the tears of Divyā Paulomā, the wife of the great sage Bhṛgu and the mother of the famous sage Cyavana (Rgvedic Cyavāna) and to flow past the Āśrama of the latter60.

59. *i. e. in Ancient Geography of India, map no. X.*
60. Ādi parva 6,
This Āśrama is still recognised to have been situated on the isolated and fairly high hill of Ḍhosī having three peaks and three springs as well as a well sacred to the Moon (Candra Kūpa or Candra Tīrtha) and named the Āreka Parvata, i.e. the mountain of Ṛcīka (Bhārgava)\(^{61}\). The name Ḍhosī (also pronounced as Ḍhūṣī) is obviously a corrupt form of Vadhūṣarī derived from Vadhūṣarā. In the Mahābhārata\(^{62}\), the river Vadhūṣarā is described as a sacred stream with many holy places on its banks, including one called after Bṛgu himself. This holy place is said to be respected over the three worlds and adored by the great sages of the past; another holy place is Dīptoda, where the great rṣi Bṛgu is said to have practised austerities. Rāma Jāmadagnya-Bhārgava (Paraśu Rāma), the mighty sage-warrior, is said to have regained his energy, after being deprived of the same by Rāma Aikyvāku by bathing in the tirthas of this river. This legend is palpably wrong unless it refers to a descendant of Rāma Jāmadagnya as he himself being a Rgvedic rṣi, could not have been a contemporary of his Aikyvāku namesake, a king of Ayodhyā in later days.

These references prove that the Vadhūṣarā-Duhān must have been a fairly large, perennial and important river in early days, more so than the Kṛṣṇāvatī and even the Sāhbī-Rasā, which, so far as I know, are not mentioned in that Epic.

Both the Kṛṣṇāvatī and the Vadhūṣarā must have been fairly large and permanent rivers, the latter being the bigger of the two, for reasons mentioned in connection with the Sāhbī-Rasā.

The area, through which the Kṛṣṇāvatī flowed, had no connection with the two famous Kṛṣṇas and the well-known queen Kṛṣṇā of the post-Rgvedic days. Kṛṣṇa Dvaipāyana Pārāśara Vāsiṣṭha, popularly known as the Vedavyāsa or briefly Vyāsa, is traditionally known to have had his āśrama at Vyāsasthālī, the modern Bastāli in Kurukṣetra. A forest called the Vyāsa Vana, with Manojava in it and apparently named after the Vyāsa, is also mentioned near Vyāsasthālī and is identified with the area around Barās in the same locality. Parāsaraśrama, the home of his ancestors, is said to have been situated between Bālu, and Behlolpur villages in

---

the same neighbourhood. Kṛṣṇa Vāsudeva Vārṣneya-Yādava, the Lord Kṛṣṇa, is connected with the Mathurā area and then Dvārakā in Saurāstra. Kṛṣṇā Draupadī Pāncālī came from the southern parts of the Gaṅgā-Yamunā doāb and, after her marriage, was connected with the Kuru kingdom (stretching from the upper course of the Gaṅgā to the desert and north of the Dvaipāyana lake). The river Kṛṣṇāvatī, on the other hand, ran in the domains of Matsyas. It could not have, therefore, derived its name from these three. The only other well-known people of that name were the Ṛgvedic Kṛṣṇas mentioned in several verses. It is, therefore, not unlikely that this river got its name from that tribe. There are at least five or six other examples of such naming in the ancient days which will be discussed in their proper places. It is thus not illogical to hold that this Kṛṣṇāvatī got its name from the Ṛgvedic Kṛṣṇas who lived in its valley. As the verses show the Kṛṣṇas to be the aggressors, it is not unreasonable to suggest that it was the Vadhūsara-Duhān, its sister river in the north-west that was the scene of the battle and was known as the Amśumati in the Ṛgvedic days.

As will be explained elsewhere this river was also known as the Bhānumatī (another name connected with the sun) at one time. I, therefore, think that Amśumatī was the ancient name of the Bhānumatī-Vadhūsara-Duhān. The Kṛṣṇāvatī is not mentioned in the existing verses. Both of them joined the Arvāvat sea from the south-west, probably separately and somewhere near the border of Jhajjar tehsīl in Ṛgvedic days.

The Anumatī. The river, now called the lower Naī and mentioned above as joining the Duhān, appears to have been formed by more than one branch of the Drṣadvatī flowing southwards between Mūṇak and Sīṅkh. It was very probably reinforced by a stream or two from the Yamunā between Mūṇak and Pāṇīpat. It is represented now by a bed, This bed starts from the old beds of both these rivers in several nālās between Sīṅkh and Pāṇīpat. All beds except one unite above Chacarānā. It, then, runs almost due south to Gohānā, where it is joined by the last nālā from the Yamunā which starts near Pāṇīpat. It, then, passing about two miles west of Rohtak, goes further south and later on, passes Kāhnaur

and Hussainganj. It is shown in the modern maps ending near a temple between Mārot and Bilocpur (probably a little below the site of its old confluence with the Duhān). Older maps show the course of the combined stream, as first running further south past Bilocpur and then going in a zig zag way along Kanvāh, Kitraudh, Hasanpur and Silānī and joining the lake near Jāhānghīrpur. After that, the stream is shown running south-east past Sūrā, Kiloī, Dādrī (in Jhajjar Tehsīl), Sondhī, Muṇḍā-Kheḍā and Rāvaṭā and falling into the main marsh of Najaṛgaṛh. According to older maps, the combined stream of Naī and Duhān was joined by that of the Sāhbī and the Krṣṇāvatī near the temple between Mārot and Bilocpur. After very heavy rains the Sāhbī still joins it near Dādrī and Krṣṇāvatī a little further up, but the Duhān is never sufficiently strong to join it anywhere now.

Cunningham, who has not shown the upper course of the Drṣadvatī above Mūṇak, shows it as suddenly appearing there and at once dividing into two branches. One branch running southwards is probably meant to represent this river⁶⁴. But he joins it to the old course of the Yamunā a little below the level of Sonipat. It is not supported by any authority. The evidence of all the maps, that I could get, indicates the course described above.

It is probably this river, that is called the Anumaṭī⁶⁵ and is associated with Brhaspati, who very likely flourished in the valley of this river and in the country between it and the Duhān-Vadhūsārā-Bhānumati-Aṃśumati and thus came into conflict with the Paṇis and the Krṣṇas living further south-east. This river is mentioned in another place also⁶⁶. It probably joined the Arvāvat sea, separately from the Aṃśumati near the border of the Jhajjar tehsīl in Rgvedic days.

Being the home-river of Brhaspati, the deified representative of the priestly class in later days of the Rgvedic age, it also got deified. As will be explained later on, it later came to be known as the Haviṃmatī. Its bed has now been turned into a nāḷā and is called the (lower) Naī as already stated.

---

64. Cunningham: Ancient Geography of India, map no. X.
65. i.e. in X-167-3.
66. अरुणाचल पुरुषस्मायु च च्छुः पुन: प्राणसिद्धो तः चेण्डो भोगम्।
प्रणालृक्षेम सुर्ययुज्वरुत्तमसुखं गुल्लया न: स्वस्ति॥ X-59-6.
The Sūnṛtā. The Sūnṛtā is mentioned in two verses. In one verse it is mentioned in a deified form. In the former verse it is associated with the deified Bṛhaspati, and in the latter with others. Sūnṛtā was possibly the name of the biggest of the upper affluents of the Anumati.

The Asuniṭī. The Asuniṭī mentioned in the deified form, and in association with the Anumati in one verse, was possibly the stream, which branched off from the Yamunā near Pānīpat and joined the Anumati near Gohāna.

Unfortunately there is no more evidence available in the Ṛgveda to support the above inferences about these rivers. But a study of the rivers of the next group will show that these inferences are not wide of the mark.

The six rivers discussed above, of which five are mentioned by name in the Ṛgveda, may be said to form the second and the southernmost group of the rivers of Saptā Saindhava.

Section III

The Third Group

This group consisted of the Sarasvatī and its sister rivers together with their tributaries and affluents. One verse describes Sarasvatī as swelled by many rivers, denoting that it had several tributaries. Another verse speaks of it as having three origins or sources and bearing or receiving the waters of seven rivers. Still another verse describes it as the seventh and the mother of rivers. The description probably means that the Sarasvatī was the main out of the seven rivers; the other six rivers were like its

67. प्रेतु ब्रह्मास्ति: प्र देवेणु सूतिता। अच्छा बीरे नर्म पत्तिराधिं देवा यज्ञ नयन्तु न:॥ I-40-3 and प्र नो ब्रह्मास्ति: प्र बुद्धस्यति:। प्र देवा: प्रोत सूतिता रायो देवी ददातु न:॥ X-141-2.

68. असुनिति मनो अस्मासु धारय जीवातवे सु प्र तिरा न बायु:। रारिनि: सुर्यस्य संदृश्य गुरुः व तन्म वर्षयस्व॥ X-59.5, & 6.

(For the latter see footnote 66).

69. X-59-6 (see footnote 66).

70. सरस्वती सिन्धुभि: पिन्नमाना VI-52-6.

71. तिष्क्रवं and सत्वशालु: VI-61-12.

72. सरस्वती सप्तथी सिन्धुमाता VII-36-6.
children coming to their mother. Yet another verse describes it as having seven sisters\(^{73}\) while one verse speaks of the Sarasvatī and seven rivers\(^{74}\), both evidently referring to the same fact.

The Sarasvatī would, thus, appear to be formed higher up by three main affluents; then by seven streams, (i.e. six others, probably including the above three and main Sarasvatī as the seventh) and to have seven other sister rivers, running more or less parallel to it for a comparatively longer course, and then, either joining it or falling into the sea directly. Thus there were in all at least fourteen streams. This number, of course, does not include any tributaries of the seven sister rivers of the Sarasvatī. The total will, therefore, exceed fourteen. I have studied in all forty streams of various sizes in the basin of that river. But, unfortunately, in addition to the tremendous geological changes that have taken place since the Rgvedic times, human hand has also played its part in changing the courses and destinies of many of them. It is known and has also been noted by Cunningham\(^{75}\) that to get as much water for his canals as possible Firuz Shāh Tughluq got several of these rivers and their affluents so interlaced and insolated with one another that their natural courses got radically altered and people got confused about their names. However, an effort has been made to identify them, with what degree of success, it is for the learned reader to judge.

*The Drṣadvatī.* This river is mentioned in a verse, already quoted in connection with Mānuṣa and Ilāyāspada, as apparently forming the southern limit of the territories of the Bharatas in the days of Devavāta and probably also of Mānuṣa area\(^{76}\).

Some scholars, including Das\(^{77}\), have identified it with the Ghaggar, ignoring the indication given by its earlier mention in the verses and the well-known tradition, supported by a verse recited both in the beginning and the end of the Mahābhārata Vana parva LXXXIII to the effect that the holy Kurukṣetra was bounded by the Sarasvatī in the north and the

---

73. सत्स्वसमा VI-61-10.
74. सरस्वत्वचन्तु सत्त चिन्वित: VIII-54-4. ✓
76. III-23-4. (See Chapter I, footnote 87).
Drśadvatī in the south. The Drśadvatī, being thus, situated in the south of the Sarasvatī cannot be the Ghaggar which flows in the north of the Sarasvatī.

Others have identified the Drśadvatī with the Cataṅg. They are right in so far as the river actually forming the southern boundary of Kurukṣetra has been called by that name after its union with the (lower) Cataṅg below Dhāratrī in later days. But Dhāratrī is situated almost half way between the south-eastern (at Siṅkh) and the south-western (at Rāmrāi) corners of the holy area. Besides, there are reasons to believe that these two rivers united further west and outside the sacred tract in earlier days, because, as will be shown later on, the (lower) Cataṅg ran a more north-westerly course in those days. In fact, this river ran through the middle of the holy region. The (upper) Cataṅg was, and is still, quite separate from the lower river of that name and runs between the two easternmost Sarasvatīs outside and in the east of Kurukṣetra. They could not, therefore, form its southern boundary and thus could not represent the ancient Drśadvatī.

Still others, including Cunningham, have identified the Drśadvatī with the Rāksī. But Rāksī is a different river. Rāksī is the modern name of the river Rākā mentioned in the Rgveda. Though the Rāksī joined the real river forming the southern limit of Kurukṣetra near its south-eastern corner in later days, the evidence of its old beds shows that it did so further west in earlier days and thus ran through the south-eastern parts of the holy area instead of forming its boundary. It could not, therefore, be the Drśadvatī.

Cunningham has, however, marked the real Drśadvatī, though without naming it, from about Mūnak downwards along the southern border of Kurukṣetra and shown it as joining the Sarasvatī near Bhaṅner. As already stated, owing probably to an error of judgement, he has not marked it above Mūnak. The general slope of the area being from north-east to south-west, he could not have meant the upper end of this river to be a

78. दक्षिण दस्तवत्र द्वयत्वत्तलित च। ये ब्राह्मण कुस्तोसि ते ब्राह्मण त्रिबिष्ट्वे॥
Mahābhārata, Vana parva, LXXXIII.
80. Cunningham: Ancient Geography of India, map nos. V, VI & X.
branch of the Cataṅg, going first south-east, then dividing into two sub-
branches, one running south-west and rejoining the other main branch, and
the other running exactly in the opposite direction and then turning south-
wards to join the Yamunā. Obviously, there is a mistake. The other map
of the same book, however, shows the Drṣadvatī further up and running
in the east of Karnāl. The lowest part of its old course is represented in
modern maps by a short but broad, dry bed, which starts in the north-east
of Baḍopal (in Bīkāner district) and joins the dry bed of the Sarasvatī
about five miles further west broadening it noticeably. Older maps mark
it as starting about ten miles further east near Maṅjuthal. Looking further
east they unmistakably point to the Hānsī-Hisār branch of the western
Yamunā canal, which now ends above Bhādrā, as its upper channel. The
lower part of the canal beyond Hisār is not yet straightened out and looks
more like the course of a natural river than that of an artificial canal. All
the older maps show a river with a tortuous and winding course in place of
the canal right up to its very sources. It must, therefore, be the present west
Yamunā canal with its Hānsī-Hisār branch which now represents the
ancient Drṣadvatī. This must have been a large river with continuous and
ample supply of water fed by hill streams so as to have stones at least in the
upper part of its bed to justify the name ‘the Stony’. It thus appears to
have been originally formed by the modern Bolī with ‘the Khilonvālā; the
Cikan, the Palāsī and the Nimbūvālā hill streams as its affluents. The
united stream now runs almost due south and joins the western Yamunā
Canal about three miles east of Chachrauli town. But the evidence of the
depression of the old bed of the Yamunā proves that a channel dug along
it from Bhogrīvālā downwards has been taken out of it at Shāhjahānpur
village and joined to the Bolī, while the old Yamunā runs further south
along Bhūl Kheḍī and Harīvā up to the present canal works. Here the two
rivers came very close to each other and the Drṣadvatī Bolī was joined
by the Som. It went further west and passed the old Śrughna (now repres-
ented by Būḍiyā, Dayālgādh, Sugh and Amādalphur) on its right. The
course between the canal works and Būḍiyā is now fully straightened out,
but old maps show it as tortuous. The Drṣadvatī, then, ran almost due
west to the site of the present Jagādhārī Railway Station, and afterwards

81. *i.e.* Cunningham: *Ancient Geography of India*, map. no. XIV.
turned south-west and went past Dāmla and Radaud to Indřī. This part of the course is still not quite straight though it has been worked as a canal for several centuries. Old maps show it as much more tortuous. The Drṣadvaṭi further ran south-east for a few miles but soon turned south-south-west past Naglā, Siṅghoā and Būḍhākheḍā. It then passed east of Karnāl and crossing the ancient Royal road four miles south of that town reached about three miles east of Mūṇak. It was here that Fīroz Shāh got a canal dug, out of it and joined to the old course of the Yamunā about five miles above Pānīpat. The Drṣadvaṭi, then, ran past Dharmagaḍh and Serā and curved round north-westwards along Josī and Khaṭḷā where it was joined by the Rāksi in later days before the lower course of that river was confined to a nālā called the (upper) Naī and joined to the Hānsī-Hisār branch of the western Yamunā canal a little further down recently. Fīroz Shāh Tughluq had got a canal drawn from the right bank of the Drṣadvaṭi near Mūṇak and rejoined it at Barodh, between Josī and Khaṭḷā, probably to have a short-cut. This canal is still traceable. The Drṣadvaṭi then passed Saphidon about two miles east and went past Urlānā to Śiṅkh. In between, it threw out a branch southwards, which has been already identified with the Anumāṭī. It may be that in earlier days that branch received one or more branches thrown out further up between Mūṇak and Serā, as indicated by the existing nālās now forming the lower Naī. The Drṣadvaṭi, then, ran along Hāṭ, Āsan, Barāh, Jīnd, Dhūndhī and Rāmrāī. These places from Śiṅkh downwards are named as Tarantuka, Koṭī in Paṅcanada, Āśvin, Varāh, Jayantī with Soma, Ekahansa, Kṛtānsca and Yakṣīṇī near Rāmahradas, respectively on the southern border of Kurukṣetra along which the Drṣadvaṭi is described as flowing. Cunningham has shown it as joined by two branches of what appears to be either the Rāksi or the (lower) Cataṅg, about Saphidon and between Dhātrat and Āsan. As far as I can see, he is again mistaken. The two streams which joined the Drṣadvaṭi in this area were not branches of one river, but two separate rivers mentioned above viz the Rāksi, now represented by the (upper) Naī and the lower Cataṅg. The Drṣadvaṭi, then, flowed past Nārnavāl, Hānsī, Hisār, Māṭarsām, Śisvāl and Moḍākheḍā and fell into the Sarasvata sea in the earliest days. But when the sea receded

82. Mahābhārata, Vana parva LXXXIII.
it ran further west through the desert thus created along Chāṇībaḍī, Rāmgāḍhiā and Bhāḍrā, up to which place its course is marked in modern maps. Actually it went a few miles still further as is evident by the rows of trees and sweet water wells along its course (all other wells in the area being generally brackish). The water ordinarily runs up to Chāṇībaḍī, but reaches Rāmgāḍhiā after heavy rains and is known to have reached up to and even beyond Bhāḍrā only about 50 years ago. The subterranean stream must, however, be still going beyond Bhāḍrā to cause the growth of the trees along its bed and to supply sweet water to the wells in its neighbourhood. The course between Indrī and Hisār has been straightened out and gives the appearance of an artificial canal in modern maps, but older maps show it winding like a natural river and call it Fīroz Shāh’s canal or Cataṅg river. This proves that it was originally a river. As mentioned above, the course between Hisār and Bhāḍrā is still in its natural state. Further on, the Dṛṣadvatī appears to have run along Nohar, Rāvat-sar, Māñjuthal, Jākhḍanvālī and Baḍopal and joined the Sarasvatī below Mānaktherī in post-Rgvedic ages. As also stated above, its course is marked from above Māñjuthal in older maps and from above Baḍopal in modern maps. The name Cataṅg, applied to the river in older maps, does not mean that it was not Dṛṣadvatī. As already mentioned, the (lower) Cataṅg was a tributary of that river. The name of a combined stream depends on the notions of the people as to which of the affluents was the more important at a given time. In any case the stream above the confluence must be the Dṛṣadvatī and as the (lower) Cataṅg is, so far as I can trace, not mentioned in its later site in the older literature, Dṛṣadvatī must be accepted as the name of the main river in ancient days.

The course described above is obviously the one followed by the river only a few centuries back and must not be understood to be exactly the same as pursued by it in the Rgvedic age. Nor should the towns and villages mentioned to locate it be taken as existing in those days. What I mean to assert is that the Rgvedic Dṛṣadvatī is now represented by the Bolī and then the western Yamunā canal and its Hānsī-Hisār branch and that it ran approximately in those regions. The same is the case with the courses of all the ancient rivers discussed in this chapter.

In the Mahābhārata, the Dṛṣadvatī is called Raupyā, where it is
mentioned in connection with Paraśu Rāma and between his lakes, the Rāmahrasas, and the (south western) gate of Kurukṣetra viz., Yakṣīṇī at Rāmrāi near Jīnd.

The Mahābhārata\textsuperscript{84} also speaks of another Drṣadvatī in the Phalakīvana and of a Kauśiki Drṣadvatī confluence near Madhuvaṭī. This river, also known as the Hiranyavatī in later days probably in contrast to the Raupya-Dṛṣadvaṭī, will be discussed later on.

\textit{The Guṅgū.} The Guṅgū, mentioned before the Sinīvālī, the Rākā and the Sarasvatī\textsuperscript{85}, was probably the name of the Lohgaḍh Khol which joins the Som below Sṛggaḍh. It must have got its name from the Guṅgūs, a tribe helped by Divodāsa Atithigva Bhārata against Karaṇja and Parnāya. Sāyaṇa has identified the deified Guṅgū with Kuhū, praised as a Devī in Atharva Veda\textsuperscript{86}. He appears to be right as Guṅgū is not mentioned in that Sānkitī and as the Sinīvālī and the Rākā are prayed to in two hymns\textsuperscript{87} of the same book.

\textit{The Sinīvālī.} The Sinīvālī, mentioned in one verse between the Guṅgū on one side and the Rākā and the Sarasvatī on the other and alone in two verses\textsuperscript{88}, as well as before the Sarasvatī in another verse\textsuperscript{89} appears to be the name of modern Soma (Sombh, Somb or Som of Gazetteers and maps). Another verse describes it as having broad currents\textsuperscript{90}. It is still a very broad stream as compared to its length. It now joins the Bolī and the Western Yamunā Canal about three miles south-east of Chacharaulī town and probably joined the Drṣadvaṭī about the same place.

\textit{The Rākā.} The Rākā, mentioned after the Guṅgū and the Sinīvālī

\textsuperscript{84} Vana parva LXXXIII.
\textsuperscript{85} या गुङ्गाया सिनीवाली या राका या सरस्वती।
\hspace{1cm}इद्राणीमङ्गल उत्थये बहवानी स्वस्तये II 32-8.
\textsuperscript{86} VII-47.
\textsuperscript{87} 46th and 48th.
\textsuperscript{88} सिनीवाली गृहुष्ट्रके या देवानामसि स्वसा।
\hspace{1cm}जुपः ह्रव्यमात्तू प्रजाः देशि दिविविड न: II 36।
\hspace{1cm}या गुङ्गाः स्वरः गुङ्गामा बहुस्वरोऽर।
\hspace{1cm}तस्य विस्ततः हि: सिनीवालये जुष्ठोत्तन II 32-6 and 7.
\hspace{1cm}(For the last verse see footnote 85).
\textsuperscript{89} गर्म चेर्हि सिनीवालिये गर्म चेर्हि सरस्वति। X-184-2.
\textsuperscript{90} पृथुष्ट्रके II 32-6.
but before the Sarasvati in one verse\textsuperscript{91}, alone in other two verses,\textsuperscript{92} and after the Sarasvati and Bhaddivā in one verse,\textsuperscript{93} is obviously the modern Rākṣī. It now starts in the plains about one-fourth of a mile north-east of Caurāhī, runs westwards south of that village up to half way between it and Bilāspur, then turns south past Shāhpur, Daryāpur, Śivakheḍā, Māṇḍkheḍā, Mīrpur, Muṇḍkheḍā, Hālūvālā, Kail, Galaulī, Ṭoprākhurd, Daulatpur, Rāṅgaḍhan, Chārī, Amloha-Bāpā, Kheḍi Dābdālan and Lādvā, half a mile west of which it is shown as joining the lower Cataṅg in modern maps. Older maps show it as running almost due south of that town towards Dhomsā. Even the modern maps show it as restarting about four miles south-west of that village and running in the same direction past Barsālū, Lathron and Kālsī, about a mile below which its course has now been straightened out into a canal, which crosses the Delhi-Ambālā road between the 83rd and 84th milestones and running due west from about two miles joins the (lower) Cataṅg. In earlier days it is known to have flowed past Tirāvaḍī and Lachmanpur, from where its course is again marked up to Narāyanā. It then went to Kāchavā, half a mile below which it restarts and runs past Hathīnā and Kaṭlaheḍī to Pevant, below which its course has now been straightened out into a nālā called the (upper) Naṭ, which goes past Pādhā, Sālavan and Dadvārā and joins the western Yamunā canal one and a half miles above Saphidon. It seems that in its natural state it joined the Drṣadvaṭī at Khaṭlā, a little further up, as indicated by an old bed coming from the north and joining the old bed of the latter river there.

Cunningham has confused this river with the (lower) Cataṅg\textsuperscript{94}. But in his map of Kurukṣetra in the \textit{Archaeological Survey of India Report}\textsuperscript{95}, he has shown it as running past Ṭoprā and Lādvā, then uniting with the

\textsuperscript{91} II-32-8. (see footnote 85).
\textsuperscript{92} राकामहृ शुमतां शुमत्वति हुवः स्वप्रातः न: सुमगा बोधतु व्यवमा.
\textsuperscript{93} सीव्यतपः सुवच्चिद्वमनमयः ददातु बीरे वत्तवायमुस्तम् II-41।
\textsuperscript{94} यात्स्ते राके शुमतयः शुमकाणो यानिन्देदासि ददायेति वरूनिः.
\textsuperscript{95} ताभिन्नो अः सुमनो उपागः सहस्रोपं सुभागं राजग्यत II-II-32-4 & 5.
\textsuperscript{93} द्वृत्तत्त्र अपषो ये शुमतां वृत्त्यः पतनीलोचो विम्भनतः।
\textsuperscript{94} सरस्वती बृहद्वितेत राका द्वास्यस्तत्वेदिरवश्यत्तु शुभाः II V-42-12.
\textsuperscript{95} Cunningham : \textit{Ancient Geography of India}, map no. X.
lower Cataṅg near Tirāvāḍi but separating again after a very short course and then dividing into two branches after a further short-run between Saṅkhḍā and Narāyanā. One branch is shown as running southwards past Sagā and Behlolpur (Parāsarāśrama) while the other is marked as going round south-east to Kāchavā, the two reuniting at Bāḷū and then rejoining the (lower) Cataṅg at Nīsaṅg. Bāḷū is recognised as situated on the old Kauśikī Saṅgam both by local traditions and according to Cunningham, but the latter is incorrect in explaining it as the confluence of the Kauśikī and the Drṣadvatī mentioned in the Mahābhārata. That confluence, described near Madhuvaṭi, is recognised at Mohanā, about fifteen miles west-north-west of Bāḷū. In fact, as will be explained later on, this Kauśikī was not the Rāksī but quite a different river, though it is clear that the latter, whose two branches reunited at Bāḷū (Kauśikī-Saṅgam), must have also been known (at least in its lower course through Kurukṣetra) as the Kauśikī in some post-Mahābhārata age. The Rāksī has been called the Kauśikī in the later list of the rivers of Kurukṣetra, quoted in the Archaeological Survey of India Report, while the Kauśikī of the Mahābhārata, near Madhuvaṭi has been named Madhuśravā, probably because it ran through the Madhu forest and to distinguish it from the Rāksī which usurped the former name in later days.

The first remnant of its old bed, described above, indicates that in earlier days the Rāksī ran further west than marked by Cunningham in his map of Kurukṣetra, while the Kauśikī Madhuśravā, which will be soon proved to be no other than the lower Cataṅg) flowed further north-west past Mohanā. The Rāksī would have then run from Tirāvāḍi past Sagā and Divāṅkheḍā to Nīsaṅg, below which it flowed more or less in the channel now occupied by the (lower) Cataṅg and joined the Drṣadvatī near Āsan. But gradually it moved eastwards and at one time ran the course shown by Cunningham and the second existing fragment of its old bed under the name Kauśikī in that area. Finally it occupied the channel marked by its latest course described above.

I have described the present traceable courses of this as well as some

98. Vana parva LXXXIII.
other rivers in details, as they are fast disappearing and there is every danger of there being no trace of them left after a short period.

The Brhaddevā. The Brhaddevā mentioned in one verse99 between the Sarasvatī and the Rākā and alone in another100 appears to have been the name of the rivulet which now starts in the plains about one mile south of Bilāspur and running southwards past Bherthal, Arṇāvālī, Shāhpur and Maṇḍāvālī, nearly parallel to the Rākṣi and between it and the easternmost Sarasvatī, joins the former about a mile below the last named village. It is much wider than the Rākṣi.

All these four rivers, viz. the Guṅgū (or the Kuhū of the Atharva Veda), the Sinīvālī, the Rākā and the Brhaddevā, as well as the Anumatī and Asunīti, already described are deified like the Sarasvatī and the two of its affluents, namely the Akṣarā and the Aramatī, to be discussed later on, and are prayed to for gifts of all sorts. But a rational study of the verses referred above will prove that they were in reality rivers and not merely Lunar (or Soma) Goddesses as explained by scholars. A verse speaks of them as rivers carved out by Vibhva101 (in the same way as Varuṇa is said to have cut the channels of the Indus102 already quoted) and as the wives of the strong male i.e. the sea103 (the Sarasvatī sea being described as growing like a virile, strong and young male among ladies i.e. rivers, connected with sacrifices104). Their connection with Soma, probably the plant and not the moon, is evident by the broadest of them being still called Soma. Scholars like Lüdwig and Griffith were of opinion that the ‘separate (according to Griffith inexhaustible) ones’ and the butter (i.e. good water) dripping four’ were the Guṅgū (or the Kuhū) the Sinīvālī, the Rākā and the Anumatī105. The Brhaddevā would replace the Anumatī better as the latter is not associated with these rivers in the verses while the former is. If this explanation be correct, and there is no reason to doubt

100. उत माता बृहद्विवा शृणोतु नस्तवद्ग्य तेपेसमिर्जनिनिः: पिता वचः।
7 समुखिता बाजो रघुसति तरंगो रघु: शङ्क: शशानात्स्य पातु न:। X-64-10.
101. वद्यो बिम्बनताः: V-42-12.
102. X-75-2. (see Chapter I, footnote 30).
103. वृह्यः: पली: V-42-12.
104. VII-95-3. (see Chapter I, footnote 109).
it, it will support the above conclusion. This verse also indicates that the Soma plant grew in the mountains above their sources.

The Rākā and the Bṛhaddivā probably used to rise in the hills like the others, but their uppermost channels were, like that of the easternmost Sarasvatī, diverted into the Som by the engineers of Fīroz Shāh Tughlūq, thus reducing them to their present conditions.

The Āpayā. This river is, as already stated, mentioned in association with Ilāyaspada, the Drṣadvatī, Mānuṣa and the Sarasvatī. Das has expressed the probability of its being the same as Mārkaṇḍā or the Cataṅg. Being mentioned as it is in the verse it could not be the former, which flows in the north of the Sarasvatī and far away from Ilāyaspada and Mānuṣa. The (upper) Cataṅg, situated as it is between the two eastern Sarasvatīs and joining the easternmost one far above these two places, could not also represent it. The (lower) Cataṅg was in fact Āpayā in earlier days, but the present river of that name is only a branch of it that ran and is still running a quite different course. A river called the Āpagā is mentioned in the Mahābhārata and is said to flow one Krośa east of Mānuṣa, while Ilāyaspada at Saraṇa is mentioned soon after it. Cunningham, supported by local traditions, has described this Āpagā (wrongly mentioned as ‘also known as Aughvatī’) as a branch of the (lower) Cataṅg, which separated from it a few miles west of Lādvā and ran past Palval and Pabanavā for about twenty-five miles before being lost in the sand.

On the river Āpagā he has mentioned Candlānā (about three miles south-west of Pabanavā), Pharal (in the Phalakivana of the Mahābhārata) further south-west and Godli (Gadli or Gadhlī of modern maps) still further in the same direction and between Kaithal and Mānas (Kedāra of Kapiṣṭhala and Mānuṣa of the Mahābhārata). This channel of the Āpagā is now represented by the recently rejuvenated (lower) Khāṇḍ. Obviously it is the same river as the Rgvedic Āpayā, which is, therefore, now represented by the (lower) Cataṅg and its northern branch viz. the (lower) Khāṇḍ in its upper course. Modern maps show it starting independently in the plains between Dughārī and Sultānpur about a quarter mile south

106. III-23-4. (see Chapter I, footnote 87).
107. Vana parva LXXXIII.
109. Ibid pp. 99, 100 & 101 as well as map of Kurukṣetra.
of the united bed of the two eastern Sarasvatīs and the (upper) Cataṅg which forms a ‘V’ in the north-west of its starting point. Older maps show it as branching off from that stream exactly at that point. It was thus a branch of the Sarasvatī. It runs west south-west up to one mile east of (northern) Behlolpur, then curves round south-eastwards past Navārsī to about half a mile west of Lādvā, where it is now joined by Rāksi. It then turns south-westwards and divides into two just below Bhoran, two miles below Lādvā. The upper branch, now called the (lower) Khāṇḍ, runs almost due west past Mathānā, Umri and Palval and has been made to join the biggest lake of Kurukṣetra. But according to the authorities quoted above, it used to flow in a more southerly direction from Palval to Pabnāvā passing the Pāvana lake a few miles in the south and disappeared beyond Candlānā in the last century; while in earlier days it ran further to Pharal and then to Gadli i.e. between Mānuṣa and Ilāyāspada. Local tradition mentions it in the west of Kaithal as well. It can thus be clearly traced from the place of its origin to the west of Kaithal. Its further course is not mentioned anywhere, but there are two fragments of old beds further south-west, which may belong to this river. One of them is found from two miles and a half west of Lahariyān, past Sotar and Hasaṅg to about one mile south of Pālsar. Older maps show it further up in the north of Lahariyān and also connected by a nālā with the old bed of the Sarasvatī which runs close by further north and is known as the Sukrū. The other starts in two channels north of Moḍīa Kheḍā, two miles above the terminus of the Sīrsā branch of the Western Yamunā canal. These two beds unite after a course of about four miles each and then run westwards with a very slight inclination towards north almost parallel to the bed of Ghaggar-Sarasvatī and past Mallheka, Keśopurā, Koṭli, Surbādh, Humāyūn Kheḍā and Šekhū Kheḍā to Maujā Kheḍā where it joins that bed. The old course of the Āpayā beyond Kaithal would, therefore, be roughly along Guhnā (Gobhavana of Mahābhārata, Ujhānā, Dhambān, Pirthalā, Lahariyān, Sotar, Pālsar, Fatehābād, Jodhkā, Shāhpur-Begū and Cauburjā to Moḍīa Kheḍā, below which it joined the Sarasvat sea in the earliest days and the Trṇabindu lake afterwards. When the lake got filled up it

110. Pāvana of Mahābhārata, Vana parva, LXXXIII.
111. Vana parva LXXXIII.
went further past Mallehkā, Koṭī etc. and joined the Ghaggar-Sarasvati at Maujā-Kheḍā.

The lower branch thrown out by Āpayā-Āpagā-Cataṅg below Bhoran, being now bigger than the ancient main stream for some centuries, is still called Cataṅg. It runs west-south-west past Gādhilī and Kheḍī-Gādhīān, then southwards past Bairsāl and Butānā, from above which its course has now been straightened out into a canal. Recently a canal has been dug out of the river further up two miles west of the railway line. But the old bed up to Butānā is still clearly marked, though it is bound to disappear in due time as the water is diverted into a new canal. The river is known to have run from Butānā west-south-west past Pojam and Aṇjanthal to Sohlon, a little below which it resumes its natural course and runs along Sāmbhī to Baholā. It, then, turns almost due south and flows past Barās and Nisaṅg, then south-west past Dacor, Corkārsā, Rattak and Mūndh and is shown as lost about one mile east-south-east of Bāhari in modern maps. Older maps show it as proceeding still further past Poprā and joining the Drṣadvaṭī between Dhātrat and Āsan.

This is the only river that flows through the middle of the Kurukṣetra area at present, though it has no water except in the rainy season. But the Mahābhārata112 mentions four rivers running through that area which are also known to the local traditions and have been mentioned by Cunningham, though some under different names. They are:

*The Drṣadvaṭī Junior.* It is mentioned in the Phalāki forest and near Madhuvaṭi in the Mahābhārata. Under the corrupt name Drṣaṭvaṭi and also Hiraṇya vaṭi, it is mentioned by local traditions and Cunningham113 in connection with Pharal (the village of the Phalāki forest), Mevalī and Mohanā (in the Madhu forest, where Madhuvaṭi is located). Cunningham has further corrupted the name into Drupadaṭi and Datovaṭi in connection with the last two places. Its confluence with the Kauṣikī is recognised at the last place. It would, thus, seem to have been a branch of the Āpagā, which came out near Pharal and joined the Kauṣikī between Mevalī and Mohanā after a very short course.

All these three places *viz.* Pharal, Mevalī, and Mohanā are situated in the northern parts of Kurukṣetra about ten miles east of Kaithal. The

---

112. Vana parva LXXXIII.
Drṣadvatī of these places cannot, therefore, be the river that formed the southern boundary of Kurukṣetra. There were thus two rivers named Drṣadvatī in post-Ṛgvedic days: one forming the southern boundary of Kurukṣetra and mentioned in the Ṛgveda, i.e. the Raupyā-Drṣadvatī of the Mahābhārata and the other a branch of the Āpayā-Āpagā, not mentioned in the Sarīhitā, but flowing through the northern parts of the sacred tract and known as the Hiranyaavatī-Drṣadvatī in later days.

The Kauśikī. This river is mentioned in the Mahābhārata only in connection with its confluence with the Hiranyaavatī-Drṣadvatī near Madhuvaṭī. But according to local traditions and Cunningham it is at Kheḍī-Rāmnagar (misspelt Kheḍirā maṅgar by the latter), Nigdhu (or Nagdhu, misspelt Gandhu by the latter), Kopar (Koe of maps), Mevalī and Mohanā (the village in the Madhuvana and having Madhuvaṭī of the Mahābhārata at it) near which it is said to have united with the Hiranyaavatī-Drṣadvatī.114 Of these Kheḍī-Rāmnagar is situated in northeastern parts of Kurukṣetra, about six miles west of Kheḍī Gādhīān. The name Kauśikī is obviously derived from the Kuśikas. Gādhīān is supposed to be a corruption of Gādhipuri i.e. the town of Gādhī or Gāthin, the father of Viśvāmitra Kauśika; while Kheḍī Gādhīān means the overflow settlement of Gādhis, i.e. the Kauśikas. The Ṛgveda indicates the Kuśikas to be connected with Bharatas, living between the Drṣadvatī and the Sarasvatī.

Aitareya Brāhmaṇa118 calls Viśvāmitra a leader of the Bharatas. It is, therefore, not unreasonable to suppose that the Kuśikas lived in the north-eastern parts of the Kurukṣetra through which the Kauśikī ran in its upper course with Gādhīān and Kheḍī-Gādhīān as their centres and thus gave their name to the river. This conclusion is further supported by a story mentioned in the Rāmāyaṇa118 that Satyavatī Kauśikī (the sister of Viśvāmitra, the wife of Rṣiṇa Bhārgava and the mother of Jamadagni) went to heaven after the death of her husband and then became the river Kauśikī and that Viśvāmitra used to live on its banks before he retired to his hermitage.

This river Kauśikī is identified with the Kauśikī or Kosi in Bihār

115. भरतप्रम भ्व. VII-3-17.
116. I-35.
by Griffith; vide his translation. But he and others of his view have ignored the fact that the story of Viśvāmitra as given in the Rāmāyaṇa is an obvious interpolation of later days, for the simple reason that Viśvāmitra, the son of Gādhi (or Gāthin) and uncle of Jamadagni (all of whom were Rgvedic rṣis and the former, a contemporary of Sudās Tṛṣtu according to Rgveda\textsuperscript{117} and of Triśaṅku and Hariścandra, the remote ancestors of Rāma Dāshrathī, according to later literature) could not be a contemporary of Rāma. The last editor of the Rāmāyaṇa added the story probably with a view to avoiding its being lost and he found an excuse because a much later descendant of Viśvāmitra was connected with the story of Rāma. The river Kauśikī, connected with the original, i.e., the Rgvedic Viśvāmitra (son of Gāthin Kauśika) and his elder sister Satyavati (the mother of the Rgvedic Jamadagni), must be situated between the Raupyā-Dṛṣadvati and the Sarasvatī and could be no other than the Kauśikī of Kurukṣeta mentioned in the Mahābhārata. The Kauśikī of Bihar must have got that name in later days when Videgha Mathava migrated from the Sarasvatī regions to the country beyond the Sadānīrā as mentioned in the Śatapatha-Brāhmaṇa\textsuperscript{118}.

This legend also indicates that the Kauśikī river came into existence at a later period.

All these facts show that the Kauśikī of Kheḍī-Rāmnagar also flowed past Gādhiḷī and Kheḍī-Gādhiḷ. This means that it is now represented by the (lower) Cataṅg in its upper course and was, therefore, a branch of the Āpagā. It may, thus, be described as separating from the mother river somewhere below Lāḍvā and running west-south-westwards past Gādhiḷī and Kheḍī-Gādhiḷ to Kheḍī-Rāmnagar; then taking a more southerly course past Gitālpur where its old bed is still traceable for about one mile and a half between that village and Būḍhsām; then past Nigdhū and Kopar; then turning westwards and passing between Saṅgraulī in the north and Dusain and Teoṇḍhā in the south, where again its old bed is still marked for about two miles and then between Mevalī and Mohanā, where it is said to have been joined by the Hiranyakavi-Dṛṣadvati. Its further course is not mentioned anywhere; but probably it ran south-

\textsuperscript{117} III-53.
\textsuperscript{118} I-4-1-14 to 17.
westwards past Pūndrī Sīslā, Deoban and (western) Bālū etc. and joined the Raupyrā Dr̥ṣṣādvaṭī somewhere between Jīnd and Nārnaund.

This Kauśikī is also known as Madhuśravā in local tradition, probably because it flowed near Madhuvaṭī in the Madhu forest. It is mentioned by that name in the list of the nine rivers of Kurukṣetra\textsuperscript{119}, the name Kauśikī being applied to the Rākṣī therein. It was also called the Svarṇavaṭī near Dusain.

*The Gaṅgā of Mrgadhūmā.* This river, known as the Mandākini Gaṅgā in local tradition and also according to Cunningham\textsuperscript{120}, is said to have run past Nigdhū or Nagdhū (wrongly spelt Gandhu\textsuperscript{121}). A Gaṅgā Tīrtha is also mentioned at Dusain\textsuperscript{122}. The Pāncatīrthī at Kopar\textsuperscript{123A} is also said to include one called the Gaṅgā. A local tradition describes the confluence of the Mandākini Gaṅgā with the Kauśikī at Nigdhū. But as that place is situated in the north of Kopar and north-east of Dusain, this Gaṅgā could not have united with the Kauśikī at Nigdhū and run parallel and close to it past Kopar and Dusain at one and the same time. It would thus appear that in the earlier days this Gaṅgā ran past Nigdhū, Kopar and Dusain and joined the Kauśikī about the last place, but at a later period began to do so at the first. It was obviously a branch of the Āpagā and might have come out somewhere between Thānesar and Bārnā.

*The Vaitarani.* This river, always known by the same name, is mentioned near Trivīṣṭapa, identified with the modern Teoṇṭhā\textsuperscript{123B}. It is not mentioned with any other place. It also came out of the Āpagā probably somewhere about Pabanāvā and after running a short course south-south-westwards joined the Kauśikī near Teoṇṭhā.

Though these four branches of the Āpagā (of which the chief one was the Kauśikī) are mentioned in the Mahābhārata, they are not traceable in the Rgveda. Very likely, they did not exist in the ancient days and came into existence at a later period, as suggested by the legend of the birth of Kauśikī. The Āpayā, thus, very probably ran an undivided course

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{119} *Archaeological Survey of India Report*, vol. XIV, p. 88.
\item \textsuperscript{120} *Ibid* p. 88.
\item \textsuperscript{121} *Ibid* p. 100.
\item \textsuperscript{122} *Ibid* p. 99.
\item \textsuperscript{123A} *Ibid* p. 100.
\item \textsuperscript{123B} Wrongly spelt as Dhodhā in *Archaeological Survey of India Report*, vol. XIV, p. 99.
\end{itemize}
towards west-south-west in the Rgvedic days. But after that period, it began to meet obstructions in the west and, therefore, started throwing out branches in a more southerly direction from Phral upwards, commencing with the Hiraṇyavatī-Drṣadvaṭi and ending with the Kauṣikī. Thus it came to have four branches at one time and was for that reason called the Caturaṅga (having four limbs), which got corrupt into Cauṭaṅ or Caturaṅ in the vernacular and misspelt as Chetaṅ or Chitaṅ by European surveyors and scholars. As the obstruction in the west increased, it began to send more and more water into these branches and finally into the uppermost viz. the Kauṣikī; while the ancient main stream shrank to a smaller and smaller size and began to be lost after a decreasingly shorter course with the passage of time. As a result of this the three lower branches completely disappeared. The last portion of the old course is still marked because it is situated in the desert, the middle one below Lahariyān because at some time it got a branch of the Sarasvatī joined to it and thus received some water for a longer period, while the remainder of the bed below the lake of Kurukṣetra has completely disappeared. The three lower branches have left no trace because they did not last very long and disappeared a long time ago. Ultimately the Āpayā-Āpagā-Caturaṅ has almost completely disappeared leaving behind only the Kauṣikī-Madhuraṅ running further south, which naturally usurped the name Caturaṅ. The existence of the two fragments of its old bed near Gītalpur and Saṅgraulī shows that the Kauṣikī-Madhuraṅ ran through that area for a longer time than the other three branches and till a later period after the disappearance of those three as well as the old Āpayā-Āpagā. It was probably at this time when the Kauṣikī-Madhuraṅ came to be called the Caturaṅ, that the former name was transferred to the lower course of the Rāksi. In course of time, the Kauṣikī-Caturaṅ met resistance in the west below Gādhilī and gradually shifted more and more south-eastwards, till it came to occupy the old bed of the Rāksi from Nisāṅ down towards and in which it still flows when it has enough water. A transitional course is still represented by two fragments of an old bed, one about one mile and a half long in the north-east of Amīn and the other about half a mile long in the south-south-east of Ahbalā. It thus ran from Kheḍī-Gādhīān past Bodhī, Sodhī, Amīn, Ahbalā, Sāṅvat and Baholā etc. at one time before occupying its present channel.

As stated above, the Āpayā-Āpagā-Caturaṅ had almost disappeared,
till it was rejuvenated as the (lower) Khāṇḍ recently and made to join the Pāvana lake of Kurukṣetra.

The gradual shrinking of the present river viz., the Sarasvatī has naturally also affected the surviving streams of the Āpayā and reduced them to what they are now.

Mahābharata124 also mentions a river called the Ambumati near Kāśiśvara and Mātri. Local traditions have changed this name into Anśumati and Cunningham has also mentioned it by the same name125. It is still associated with Kāśiśvara126 which is identified with Lakhnor or Māṇḍī, situated twelve miles west-south-west of Pehoā. It is not described in connection with any other place. This Ambu-(or Anśu-) matī would, therefore, be a branch of the Sarasvatī, which very probably parted a little above and rejoined the parent stream a little below Māṇḍī.

The nine traditional rivers of Kurukṣetra were thus:—

1. *The bigger or the Raupya Dṛṣadavati of the Rgveda*, which formed the southern boundary and is now represented by the Hānsī-Hisār branch of the western Yamunā Canal in that area.

2. *The Rāksi-Kauśika or the Rgvedic Rākā*, which is now represented by the (upper) Naī and flows along the south-eastern border of the holy tract when it has any water.

3. *The Kauśikī-Madhuśravā*, not mentioned in the Rgveda, was a branch of the Āpayā-Āpagā-Caturaṅga and ran through the central parts of Kurukṣetra from east to west with a slight inclination towards south. It is now represented by the (lower) Cataṅg, which runs in a more southerly direction from below Gādhilī. It was also called the Svarṇavati near Dusaṅin.

4. *The Gaṅgā of Mrgadhūma or Mandākinī Gaṅgā*, which was the second branch of the Āpayā-Āpagā-Caturaṅga and joined the Kauśikī-Madhuśravā is not mentioned in the Rgveda and has now completely disappeared.

5. *The Vaitaraṇī* which was the third branch of the Āpayā-Āpagā-Caturaṅga. It also joined the Kauśikī-Madhuśravā. It is also not mentioned in the Rgveda and is now completely lost.

124. Vana parva LXXXIII.
126. Wrongly called 'Kāmeśvara' by Cunningham; Ibid p. 100.
6. The smaller or the Hiranyavati-Dṛṣadvati was the fourth branch of the Āpayā-Āpagā-Caturāṅga joined the Kauśikī-Madhūsravā. It is also not mentioned in the Rgveda and has completely disappeared.

7. The Āpagā-Caturāṅga or the Rgvedic Āpayā, which ran through the northern parts of Kurukṣetra from east to west with slight inclination towards south. It has also almost completely disappeared together with its three lower branches, but has been recently rejuvenated as the (lower) Khāṇḍ and made to fall into the main lake of Kurukṣetra (the Pāvana).

Judging from these facts, it appears that the four branches thrown out southwards by the Āpayā were in reality its efforts to shift its course in a more southerly direction when it met obstruction in the west, which appear to have moved up gradually eastwards. As will be seen later on, the Sarasvatī has moved only slightly northwards below Makurar. I cannot trace any such movements of Dṛṣadvatī. The obstruction, therefore, appears to have been effective mainly in the valley of Āpayā between the Dṛṣadvatī in the south and the Sarasvatī in the north and only slightly in that of the Sarasvatī.

8. The Ambu-(later on called the Anśu-) maṭī, which was only a branch of the Sarasvatī round about Lakhnor or Māṇḍī.

9. The Sarasvatī was the most important river of ancient India and formed the northern limit of the holy area.

The Tīrtha called ‘Sapta Sāravata’, which means ‘of seven Sarasvatīs’ and which is identified by local traditions as well as by Cunningham127 with Māṅgnā, has nothing whatever to do with the number of rivers of Kurukṣetra. Cunningham’s suggestion, that the Madhuśravā (which he confuses with a Tīrtha of the same name at Pehoā) and the Vaitaraṇī (which he for no apparent reasons suspects to be only another name of the Dṛṣadvatī or Rāksi) be omitted from the list, is uncalled for.

I know that I have gone out of my way to discuss these rivers but as they help in elucidating the history of the Āpayā and as their identification may be of interest to certain sections of my countrymen, I crave the indulgence of the learned readers.

The Sarasvatī. There are at present above Rāmnagar four streams bearing the name Sarasvatī, with the (upper) Cataṅg situated between first and second and the (upper) Khāṇḍ between second and third from

the east. All these six streams unite above or at that village to form the Sarasvatī of Kurukṣetra. The first and second Sarasvatīs unite with the (upper) Cataṅg higher up. The (upper) Khāṇḍ and third Sarasvatī unite after a short course and their combined stream and the fourth Sarasvatī join the others near Rāmmagar. The (upper) Cataṅg, which is, and appears to have been for some centuries, the biggest of the lot, is thus joined by four streams during its course and that is very probably the reason why it came to be known as the Caturaṅga (four limbed) in later days.

The first Sarasvatī now starts in the plains near Rāmpur Heḍiān almost half-way between Bilāspur and Kāṭgaḍh. But according to local tradition, also noted by Cunningham128, the most sacred and eastern source of the Sarasvatī is said to be the Ādi-Badari Kuṇḍa north of Kāṭgaḍh, while the latter is still remembered to be the place where the sacred stream came out of the hills. This Kuṇḍa receives its water supply from khols (hill streams) of Bhairon and Mātar, the two uniting a little above it. The stream rising from the Kuṇḍa and called the Yār-Badari is still held to be the uppermost channel of the sacred stream that used to come out of the hills at Kāṭgaḍh to form the first Sarasvatī in earlier days. At present it joins the Som, about one mile south-east of that place. Older maps show it as throwing out a branch a little above Kāṭgaḍh, which after passing Raṅjītpur, (northern) Sultānpur Gulāb-Mājra and Mughlāvāli entered the bed of the first Sarasvatī at Rāmpur-Heḍiān. It must have been sending all its water through this channel into the Sarasvatī before Fīroz Shāh Tughluq got it diverted eastwards into the Som. The first Sarasvatī was, thus, a continuation of the Yār-Badari in pre-Fīroz days.

The (upper) Cataṅg rises from a complicated network of sub-mountainous nāḷās situated between Rāmpur Heḍiān in the east and Sāḍhaurā in the west.

The second Sarasvatī now rises as a surface water drain about three-fourths of a mile south-east of Sāḍhaurā. But according to the local tradition, also noted by Cunningham129, the Sadādenī (or Nakṭī) formed by the Sūkar, the Phandū and the Khunḍrā Khols (hill streams) was the westernmost source of the Sarasvatī in old days, and not an affluent of the Mārkāṇḍā as it is today. It must have, therefore, run past Sāḍhaurā in the

---

south-east and up to the bed of the second Sarasvatī in earlier days instead of running north of that town and joining the Mārkaṇḍā as it does now.

The (upper) Khāṇḍ is shown as starting in the plains one mile and a half south of Kulāvar in modern maps, but from older ones it appears to be a branch of the second Sarasvatī, which came out from it at the ‘V’ formed by it about one mile north-west of Jagdhauḷī and about three miles north of Kulāvar. It was thus a branch of the second Sarasvatī and not an independent affluent.

The third Sarasvatī now starts in the plains one mile west of Dhālur and only a few hundred yards from the second Sarasvatī, which runs in a curve from north-west to south-east there. Older maps show it as coming out of the latter exactly at that place. It was, therefore, only another branch of the second Sarasvatī and not an independent tributary.

The fourth Sarasvatī now starts further south in the plains west of Gondhānā and one mile west of the combined stream of the (upper) Khāṇḍ and the third Sarasvatī. Older maps trace it as coming out of the latter just below Gondhānī. It was thus only a sub-branch of the second Sarasvatī.

The last mentioned three being merely offshoots of the second Sarasvatī, there were only three real affluents of this river as mentioned in Rgveda where it is described as having three origins or sources¹³⁰ and also probably in Atharva Veda¹³¹, where three Sarasvatīs are mentioned. They are:—

1. The Yār-Badarī formed by the Khols of Bhairon and Mātar and which, if not diverted into the Som, would be running due south into the present first Sarasvatī. It may be called the eastern Sarasvatī.

2. The complicated network of nāḷas which give rise to the (upper) Cataṅg i.e. the middle or Caturaṅga Sarasvatī.

3. The Nakṭi or Sadādenī, very probably the Śardaṇḍā of Rāmāyaṇa¹³² and the Śarāvaṭī of Pāṇini¹³³, Jayādītya¹³⁴ and Amara, which is formed by Khols of Sūkṛa, Phandū and Khandrā and which used to form the western Sarasvatī before it changed its course and began to join the Mārkaṇḍā. The Sadādenī is identified with the Śardaṇḍā as the envoys

¹³⁰. त्रिपदस्त्र्या VI-61-12.
¹³¹. VI-100-1.
¹³². II-LXVIII-15.
¹³³. VI-3-120.
¹³⁴. Kārikā in I-1-75.
from Ayodhyā are said to have reached it after passing through Kurujāṅgala on their way to Girivraja. The Śarāvatī is said to be the boundary between Udīcyā and Prācyā i.e. the north and the east. The same is said about the Sarasvatī, of which the Sadādenī was the westernmost affluent. It is further very likely that Śarāvatī was the name of modern Sadādenī and was occasionally applied to the Sarasvatī also after their confluence.

The eastern Sarasvatī now runs past Gopālmocan (Kapālmochan of Cunningham135) and Bilāspur and joins the Middle Sarasvatī two miles west of Mandhar.

The western Sarasvatī runs from Sāḍhaurā to Dālur, where it threw out a branch, the third Sarasvatī. It then flows almost due south about a mile north-west of Jagdhaulī, where it threw out another branch, the (upper) Khāṇḍ. It then runs a zig zag course south-eastwards and joins the middle Sarasvatī about two miles below Kulcanḍū.

The combined stream of the three, then, runs past Bālchappar, Kotar Khāṇā, Choṭi-Kanhḍī, Khānpur, Sukhdāspur, Baḍi-Kanhḍī, Sīālbā, Jhār Candanā, Kheḍi-Lakkhā-Singh, Kheḍkī, Dughari and Sultānpur. Between the last two it gave rise to the Āpayā-Āpagā-Caturāṅga [the (lower) Cataṅg]. It then runs past Rāmnagar near which it is joined by two of the offshoots of the western Sarasvatī.

The (upper) Khāṇḍ runs south-south-west past the two Mansūrpurs and Mustafābād and is joined by the third Sarasvatī about two miles below the last place.

The third Sarasvatī runs south-south-west from Dālur past Sārdāheḍī, Murādpur and Jahāṅgīrpur, about where it threw out a branch westwards which ran towards Duliānī. It then passes Dhin, where it throws out another branch south-westwards. Then it goes almost due south and joins the (upper) Khāṇḍ as mentioned above.

The combined stream of the two runs past Gondhānī, where it threw out the fourth Sarasvatī, then past Gondhānā, Masānā, Hartān, Gahlaur and Guṇḍhā and joins the combined stream of the three Sarasvatīs near Rāmnagar.

---

As far as I could trace, none of these streams of the Sarasvatī is mentioned by special name in the Rgveda. But there are reasons to believe that they existed in that age though perhaps not exactly at the present sites.

The combined stream of six or [counting the (upper) Khāṇḍ and the third Sarasvatī which unite higher up, as one] five, then, runs south-westwards past Rāmgaḍh and Pipī, below which it forms the northern boundary of Kurukṣetra and passes along the numerous holy spots situated between Pipī and Beharjaccha\(^{136}\) in that area. This confirms the mention of five tributary rivers of the Sarasvatī in Vājasaneyī Sāṁhitā\(^{137}\).

*The Aksarā.* The branch thrown out by the third Sarasvatī at Dhīn and now known as the Liṅgha used to run past Barārā, Dhoā, Lakhmarī, Bīḍ-Kālvā, Sujrā, Sujrī, Dhantorī, Masānā, Khānpur-Koliān, Kaserṭā, Adhaun and Ghamur-Kheḍā and joined the combined stream of the other five about one mile south of Dābkheḍi and four miles below Thānesar. This bed has now disappeared in parts here and there in the middle, but is distinctly marked at the two ends and is easily traceable elsewhere after heavy rains. It is very probably the Akṣarā of the one verse where it is mentioned as having thousand currents\(^{138}\) and in the other where it is called the swift moving\(^{139}\), and is mentioned between the Sarasvatī in the preceding and Aramati in the succeeding verses.

*The Aramati.* The remaining branch thrown out by the third Sarasvatī, further up ran past Duliāni, Ugālā, Bāvā, Jāṇḍheḍi, Teorī, Kaṭāheḍi, Ajrānī, Udārsī and Bālāhī and joined the combined stream of the other six about two miles further down than the Liṅghā. This stream in now called the Beton. Its course is also not well defined in parts here and there now, but is quite distinct elsewhere. It is very probably this river, which is called the Aramati in a verse\(^{140}\) after a mention of the Sarasvatī and the Akṣarā in the two previous verses. Rṣi Vasiṣṭha

\(^{136}\) Arantuka of *Mahābhārata*. Vana parva LXXXIII.

\(^{137}\) XXXIV-11.


\(^{139}\) अक्षरा चरस्ती VII-36-7.

\(^{140}\) प्र वी महामरम्भित्वं कुमुद्वत्र प्र पूण्यं विद्ध्यं न वीरसम्।
भमं चिन्ताविवितारं नो अस्मयं सातौ वाजं रतियाचं पुरुषवित्तम्। VII-36-8.
prays to the Devas to make the Aramati great, meaning probably full of water.\textsuperscript{141} It is also mentioned in another verse where Agni is requested to bring the deified great Aramati\textsuperscript{142} to accept the offerings of the ṛṣi Atri. In another verse Vasiṣṭha prays to it to bring wealth to his\textsuperscript{143} and in yet another verse he describes it as connected with sacrifices\textsuperscript{144}, and requests Agni to bring it. It is also mentioned by Manu Vaivasvata.\textsuperscript{145} Elsewhere it is associated with Bṛhaspati\textsuperscript{146} while in another verse the floods are said to have run along the great Aramati.\textsuperscript{147} It would thus appear that it was considered to be an important river at least from sentimental point of view.

The Aḵṣarā is mentioned only by Vasiṣṭha, who mentions the Aramati also more frequently than any other ṛṣi. Vasiṣṭha is associated with a place called Vadaripācana north-east of Thānesar on the Sarasvatī\textsuperscript{148}.

This place is now called Vasiṣṭha Prācī. It is on account of this fact as well as their mention in that order after the Sarasvatī\textsuperscript{149}, that I have identified the Aḵṣarā and the Aramati with the Liṅghā and the Beton.

The Aramati is associated with Bṛhaspati.\textsuperscript{150} The other rivers associated with that deified ancestor of the Bhāradvājas are Aṅśumati, on the banks of which he is said to have defeated the Kṛṣṇas,\textsuperscript{151} and the Anumati.\textsuperscript{152} The other four rivers deified and, with the sole exception of the Sarasvatī, looked upon as the most important from ritualistic point of view were the Guṅgū (or Kuhū of the Atharva Veda), the Sinīvalī, the Rākā and the

\textsuperscript{141} Mahābhārata, Vana parva LXXXIII; Śalya XLII (Where Vasiṣṭha is said to have lived in the east of Sthānu on the Sarasvatī) and XLVIII.
\textsuperscript{142} in VII-36-6, 7 & 8.
\textsuperscript{143} X-64-15 (see footnote 146).
\textsuperscript{144} VIII-96-13 to 15.
\textsuperscript{145} X-167-3.
Bṛhaddivā. Curiously enough in the Mahābhārata\(^{153}\), Bṛhaspati Āṅgirasa, the chief representative of Rgvedic ritualism is said to have seven sisters who represented the chief sacrificial fires. They are, in order of seniority, as follow:—

1. Bhānumatī (The eldest and the most beautiful). It appears to be the same as the Rgvedic Aṁśumati (the later Vadhūsarā-Duḥān), the biggest of these seven rivers. Both the names Aṁśumati and Bhānumatī are connected with the sun.

2. Rāgā, an obvious corruption of the Vedic Rākā, is said to have been so named because she was loved by all. The Rākā, now called the Rāksi, is the next biggest river of the lot.

3. Sinwālī, is described as of very slender built so that she was visible at times and invisible at others. This means that the river of that name was not permanent at that time but had water only now and then. She is also called the Rudrasūtā (the daughter of Śiva). As far as I know, no daughter of Śiva is mentioned anywhere else. The epithet probably refers to its other name, the Soma, which is said to be worn by Śiva in the form of the moon on his head.

4. Arciśmati, described as of great resplendence, is obviously the Bṛhaddivā of the Rgveda which has the same meaning.

5. Havishmati, (the acceptor of offerings), is probably another name for Anumati (the divine favour).

6. Māhiśmati (the pious) is the same as Aramati (the devoted one).

7. Mahāmati or Kuhū i.e. the Rgvedic Guṅgū, is the smallest river of the lot.

These ritualistic sisters of Bṛhaspati, the deified representative of the Rgvedic ritualism, were, thus, in reality seven deified rivers of the South-eastern Sapta Saindhava. This must be due to the fact that all the ancient Brāhmaṇa families viz. the Uterine Bhārgavas (later on known as the Jamadagnis), the Śunakas (descendants of Grītsamada adopted by Śunaka Bhārgava), the Bhāradvāja and the Gautama Āṅgirases, the Vaśishthas, the Kaśyapas, the Atris, the Agastyas, and the Viśvāmitras were believed to have lived and invented and developed the Vedic rituals on the banks of these rivers and the Sarasvatī.

The Sarasvatī is then joined by the Mārkaṇḍā, through several mouths

\(^{153}\) Vana parva CC XVII.
both above and below Pehoā at present. But as will be explained in its proper place, this river used to join the Sarasvāti further down in earlier days. But Mahābhārata\(^{154}\) and Śalya\(^{155}\) speak of a river called Aruṇā as joining the Sarasvāti a little above Prθhudaka in the former and above Vasiṣṭhapavahā (in the east of the Prθhudaka where Vasiṣṭha was brought from his residence in the east of Śthānu by the Sarasvāti at the command of Viśvāmitra) in the latter. Local tradition as well as Cunningham\(^{156}\) describe the confluence at three miles north-east of Pehoā near Urpāi (Aruṇāi) village. Cunningham has identified this river with the Mārkaṇḍā, presumably because its lower course has been occupied by that river for some time. The lowest remnant of its old bed is in fact situated between the second and the third mouths of that river at present. But Mahābhārata\(^{157}\) at one place speaks of the Sarasvāti having assumed a new form called the Aruṇā and at another place it describes the Aruṇā being absent from that site in old days and the Sarasvāti going to the Aruṇā and flooding the latter with its own waters. These statements show that the Aruṇā was known to be a branch of the western Sarasvāti, which it began to throw out westwards beyond the Beton some time after the Rgvedic age, the legend containing these statements was based upon a much exaggerated and embellished later version of the quarrel between Viśvāmitra and the Vasiṣṭhas. It was, therefore, not an independent river as the Mārkaṇḍā, which is formed by several other streams besides the Sadādenī, is. The Aruṇā of the Mahābhārata cannot, thus, be the present Mārkaṇḍā which used to join the Sarasvāti further down in old days.

The upper course of the Aruṇā is now represented by three fragments of its old bed. The lowest one is traceable from Ajrānā north-eastwards past Kheḍā-Ahmadpur and Tevra to Kīsangaḍh; the second further up in the same direction from Rāvā to Sohātā and the third from between Sohātā and Ugālā to about one mile below Taṇḍvālī. It would thus appear to be a branch of the ancient Aramati (the modern Beton) and seems to have come out somewhere about Duliānī and run past Rājāvālī and the other villages mentioned above to Ajrānā, and then probably

\(^{154}\) LXXXIII.  
\(^{155}\) XLIII.  
\(^{157}\) Śalya XLIII.
through a channel which now looks like a branch of the first arm of Mārkanda but is likely to be the old bed of Araṇā. It runs past Duniā-Mazrā and Bhusthalā and is lost near Pīplī-Mazrā, but restarts half a mile west of that place and goes up to Bicki. In older days it ran a more westerly course probably past Kanthalā to Tālheḍī, and then past Chājūpur to Urṇāi, below which it joined the Sarasvatī.

As indicated by Mahābhārata-Śalya, it did not exist in ancient days and is not traceable in the Rgveda.

The Sarasvatī was, thus, originally formed by its three principal affluents and the four branches of the westernmost of them. Looked at from below Thānesar, it may be imagined as formed by seven streams. It may, thus, be described as bearer of (the waters of) seven (rivers). Again if one of them (very likely the easternmost because it is supposed to be the most sacred) be taken as the main river, it may be described as the seventh and mother of (six other) famous rivers, which made their way (to it like children) roaring and swelling (it with lot of water) as is stated there. If it be remembered that the rṣi Vasiṣṭha very probably lived near Thānesar, as indicated by Mahābhārata (and), the meaning of the verse becomes quite clear.

The epithet Saptasavā will be explained in its proper place when all the seven sister rivers of the Sarasvatī have been identified. But Māṅgā, situated between Pehoā and Beharjaccā has been called Sapta Sārasvat in the Mahābhārata and local traditions. In the Mahābhārata it is explained as it was so called because there were seven rivers in the world known as the Sarasvatī viz. (1) The Suprabhā near Puṣkara, (2) The Kaṅcanākṣī in the Naimiṣa forest, (3) the Viśālā near Gayā, (4) Manoramā in the northern Kośala, (5) Oghavaṭī in Kurukṣetra (i.e. the original Sarasvatī), (6) Surenḍu near the sources of the Gaṅgā and (7) the Vimalodakā in the Himavat forest. All of these are said to unite at Sapta-Sārasvat. The

158. सप्तवधारः।
159. आ यस्तार्कं यवसो बालबानं: सरस्वतीं सप्तवधारी सिन्धुमाता।
या: सुभ्रयत्व सुबुष्टः सुधारा अभि त्वेन पयसा पीयाना:॥ VII-36-6.
160. Vana parva LXXXIII.
161. Śalya XLII and XLVIII.
162. सप्तसवा।
163. Śalya XXXVIII.
explanation is absurd on the face of it and is an interpolation of later days, as those seven rivers are situated in widely separated parts of Northern India. The Luni, still known as the Sarasvatī in the neighbourhood of the Puṣkara, runs through south-western Rājasthāna and Gujārāt and falls into the Rann of Kaccha (Cutch). The other five appear to be the tributaries of Gaṅgā. A study of the valley of the Sarasvatī below Pehoā, however, shows that at one time this river divided itself into seven streams below that town the courses of which are partially traceable even now, viz. four in the north and three in the south of Māṅgnā. The first two in the immediate north of that village are still used by the river whenever it has enough water in that region. The others get filled up only after heavy rains. All these seven streams reunite above Sothā, the Ambu- (Aṃśu-) matī of Kāśīvara and Māтри (at Māṇḍi village) being one of them. Māṅgnā, thus, got the name Sapta Sārsvat because it was situated between these seven branches or streams of the Sarasvatī. It had nothing to do with the total number of rivers of Kurukṣetra as supposed by Cunningham or with the seven rivers named Sarasvatī in different parts of India as imagined by the author of the story\(^{164}\). The list given in that section shows that Oghavaṭi was another name of the Sarasvatī itself and not of the Āpayā or Āpagā as stated by Cunningham.

The next and the first independent river joining the Sarasvatī, viz. the Mārkaṇḍā, does so from one mile above Murtazāpur to within four miles below Pehoā through several mouths at present. But the evidence of the still existing fragments of its old bed in the north of Beharjaccā on the one hand, and north-west of Urṇāi on the other show that it used to join the Sarasvatī between Beharjaccā and Sāgrā in earlier days.

The D (T) āṅgrī (or Umlā) now joins the Ghagghar near Tatiānā, but the evidence of its old bed, which runs close by, proves that these two rivers united about twenty miles further down in earlier days. Besides the still well-marked old bed of the Ghagghar runs further west parallel to the present one up to Śatragīg and then to the Sarasvatī, which it joins three miles above Akālgadh. It would, thus, appear that the course joining the Sarasvatī at Sāgrā really belongs to the Dāṅgrī, and got later on occupied by the Ghagghar.

The Sarasvatī was thus joined by the Mārkaṇḍā between Behar-

\(^{164}\) Śalya XXXVIII.
jaccā and Sāgrā and by the Daṅghrī (or Umlā) at the latter place in earlier days. The stream below Sāgrā is now called the Gaghgar, but the presence of the old bed of that river running parallel to it in the north indicates that that river ran separately and further north in earlier days. The present channel of the combined stream, therefore, belongs to the Sarasvatī, which ran south-westwards past Pākhī, Khanaurī, Chandū and Māṇḍvī to about two miles below Makurar. At present it, then, turns north-westwards and unites with the old bed of the Gaghgar about one mile and a half further down. But its old bed, now known as Sukrū, is still clearly marked and shows that in earlier days it continued running south-westwards past Rāmpurā, Cīlevāl, Handālvālā, Dhārsūl, and Zabhīvālā, about four miles below which the course has been straightened out in connection with the Raṅgoī, inundation canal and runs past Mohammadpur, Aharvān and Hijrāon, two miles beyond which it is lost. But as the name Sirsā (Sarasvā) indicates, the Sarasvatī ran further west probably past Sadārkī, Singhā, and Darbī to Sirsā and was probably joined by the Gaghgar either at Kelanpur, or a little further down in the west of Lahaur. It may be that it sent a branch about Sirsā via Maṅgalā to join Āpayā between Mādhva Singhānā and Mallehkā. It then ran past Oṭū and entered the marshy areas round Khadyāl (Ellenābād), in which it used to be joined by the Āpayā at Maujā Kheḍā. As already explained this area was a lake known as the Dhanur till recently, the Trṇabindu in the Mahābhārata days and the north-eastern corner of the Sarasvat sea in the earliest known period. The Sarasvatī thus joined the Sarasvat sea below Oṭū in the earliest days and we leave its course here for the present.

The Sarasvatī is generally recognised as the most important river of the Rgveda, though its identity has been questioned by some scholars. But there is not a scrap of evidence to prove that the name Sarasvatī was applied to the Sindhu or any other river in those days as suggested by Zimmer, Griffith165 and others, who could not see their way to believe that the now insignificant stream bearing that name could have ever been the mighty river that it appears to have been from the verses and hymns in its praise. In some verses166, both the Sarasvatī and the Sindhu are mentioned side by side with the Sarayu intervening between them in the

165. See Griffith's note in connection with his translation of VI-61-2.
166. e.g. X-64-9 and 75-5 & 6.
former and many other rivers in the latter. In the former verse all the three are described as large rivers with huge waves\textsuperscript{167}, in the latter it is one of the seven principal rivers addressed. The theory of these scholars is, therefore, untenable. In fact, it was a mighty river and ran direct from hills to the sea as mentioned in one verse\textsuperscript{168}, and as described above.

The fact that the Sarasvatī joined the sea is mentioned in three places in the Mahābhārata also. Firstly, it is said to join the sea near Prabhāsa\textsuperscript{169} which, according to this and other sections\textsuperscript{170} was situated on the western sea coast. Secondly, at the end of the section mentioned above after the mention of Vinaśana, Shasyāṇa, Kumāra Koṭi and Rudra Koṭi, in that order, along the later course of the Sarasvatī from below upwards towards Kurukṣetra, which is described in the next section. Thirdly\textsuperscript{171}, Prabhāsa is said to belong to the Sarasvatī. The first and third refer to the same place on the south-eastern coast of Saurāṣṭra. But the second refers to a different site.

From the way in which various places are described in the Mahābhārata\textsuperscript{172}, \textit{i.e.} mostly at considerable distances, from each other, this Rudra-Koṭi appears to be situated well above Vinaśana and far below Kurukṣetra.

Vinaśana was the name given to the place where the Sarasvatī disappeared in the desert to reappear at Camasodhveda\textsuperscript{173}. It is also mentioned in the Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa\textsuperscript{174}, Lāṭyāyana Śrauta Sūtra\textsuperscript{175} and Mānava Dharma Śāstra\textsuperscript{176} and is described as the western limit of Madhyadeśa in the last. It is also alluded to in Baudhāyana Dharma Sūtra\textsuperscript{177}, where Āryāvarta is said to lie east of the region where the Sarasvatī disappears. The Sarasvatī is not mentioned by name, but as gene-

\textsuperscript{167} ऋमिति ममस्त नाथीरससा ए.X-64-9.
\textsuperscript{168} दृष्टिपृती गितिर्मय भा समुद्दातु, VII-95-2.
\textsuperscript{169} in Vana parva LXXXII.
\textsuperscript{170} \textit{i.e.} LXXXVIII and Mausala III.
\textsuperscript{171} Śalya XXXV.
\textsuperscript{172} Vana parva LXXXII.
\textsuperscript{173} Vide Vana parva LXXXII, & CXXX and also implied in Śalya XXXV.
\textsuperscript{174} XXV-10-I.
\textsuperscript{175} X-15-I.
\textsuperscript{176} II-21.
\textsuperscript{177} I-2-9.
rally accepted, it could not be any other river. The latter manuscript of Vasiṣṭha Dharma Sūtra also speaks of Āryāvarta being in the east of Adarśana, which is interpreted to mean the site of the disappearance of the Sarasvati, though originally the word was Ādarsa i.e., the Ādarsa mountains, very probably the Sulemān range. The Sarasvati is said to have disappeared at Vinaśana owing to its contempt for the Nīśādas, whose domain started about that place according to Mahābhārata and as a result of its abhorrence for the Śūdra Ābhiras who lived in that region according to the Mahābhārata. The Dasyu Ābhiras are described as living near the sacred Drumakulya sea in the Rāmāyaṇa.

In Mahābhārata Camasodbheda is said to be the place where the Sarasvati was joined by other rivers. The Sindhu is described close by and Prabhāsa is mentioned further on. From another verse of the same Parva Camasodbheda appears to be in the north of the mouth of the Sindhu and also that of the Sarasvati at Prabhāsa. From Śalya it appears to be above Prabhāsa, but below Udapana and Vinaśana along the course of the Sarasvati. It must, therefore, be the place where at one time the Satluj and the Indus—the latter after or without first uniting with the combined stream of the Biās, the Rāvi, the Aik, the Canāb and the Jhelum and in case of non-confluence with the Indus the combined stream of these five rivers as well joined the Sarasvati and where the Sarasvati could have its own water after crossing the desert in a subterranean stream past Udapana as stated in the Mahābhārata. The Meru mentioned in the latter section is obviously a mistake for Maru i.e. the desert of Rājasthān. This Camasodbheda, as will be seen later on, was situated about ten miles north of Ālor, the ruins of which are found near Rohgī in the Sindh Province (now in Pakistan). It may be noted here that in Mahābhārata, this place is said to have been situated on the sea-coast according to the sayings of the Vipras (the learned

179. Vana parva CXXX.
180. Śalya XXXVII.
181. VI-XXII.
182. Vana parva CXXX.
183. Vana parva LXXXII.
184. XXXV.
185. XXXV Śalya parva and LXXXII Vana parva (the name being not mentioned in the latter).
186. Vana parva LXXXVIII.
men), presumably in earlier days; thus proving that at one time almost the whole of the Sindh was under the sea.

Udapan, with a deep well or pit and situated near the bank of the Sarasvatī and into which its subterranean stream appeared, seems to be the modern Udasar about two miles from the right bank of the now dry bed of that river and about seven miles to the north-east of Anūpgaḍh in Bīkāner district.

The last remnant of the Drumakulya sea was situated a few miles in the north of the dry bed of the Sarasvatī between Anūpgaḍh and Sardārgaḍh in the same state. The domains of the Niṣādas and (or) the unorthodox Ābhiras would, therefore, be situated about Sardārgaḍh and Anūpgaḍh.

Vinaśana would, thus, be situated somewhere above Sardārgaḍh and probably at or about Sūratgaḍh in the days referred to in the sections of the Mahābhārata referred to above.

Śasayāna is said to be the place, where all the Puṣkaras, i.e. Tīrthas or holy places, collected in the water of the Sarasvatī every year on the full moon day of the month of Kārtika. In other words, it was supposed to be the most sacred place for that day just as Gaḍh-mukteśvar has been considered in later days. It, therefore, appears to be Bhaṭner (now called Hanumāngaḍh in district Bīkāner) which is a very famous ancient place existing in that area.

There are no clues to locate the two Koṭīs. But there are two places in Sirsā Tehsil, at present, called Cical Koṭī and Koṭī and situated on the right and left banks of the dry bed of the Sarasvatī, ten miles west-north-west and four miles south-west from Oṭū respectively. They may possibly now represent the Rudra and Kumāra Koṭīs.

As already stated, the area to the south-west of Oṭū was a marsh, named the Dhanur lake till recently and is still so to some extent. As also stated, it was a lake called the Trṇabindu in earlier days and was the north-eastern corner of the Sarasvat sea in ancient days. The bed of the Ghagghar-Sarasvatī still appears to expand out suddenly a little below Oṭu. It, therefore, appears to be the place where the Sarasvatī was remembered to have joined the Sarasvat sea in Ṛgvedic days.

The Mahābhārata, thus, recognises two different sites of the union of the Sarasvatī with the sea; one, very probably, below Oṭū in Hisār district on the north-eastern border of the desert (i.e. with the Sarasvat sea); the other at Prabhāsa, on the Saurāṣṭra coast of the then receded Parāvat or western (i.e. the modern ‘Arabian’) sea.
Amara in his lexicon has described the Sarasvati as the boundary between Udīcya and Prācyā i.e. the northern and eastern divisions of India, and according to his early commentator, it fell into the western sea. The Arab conquerors of the Sindh in the 8th century A.D. found another great river flowing through that province in the east of the Indus and named it the Great Mīhrān, which was the same as the Hakrā (Hakdā) or Vahindāh, i.e. the Sarasvati (Chanda). Utbi, the Muslim historian of the eleventh century A.D., has described the Sarasvati as "having its bed full of large stones, and with precipitous banks, and impetuous stream." Cunningham has traced its course under the name Citraṅga (Caturaṅga i.e. Cataṅg, which may indicate that the Drṣadvatī was a live river up to Māṇakherī in his days), Sotrā and Rainī from Oṭū right up to about ten miles north of the ruins of Ālor, where he has shown it as joined by another river, the Nārā, which branched off from the modern course of the Indus about twenty-five miles above the confluence and which he has described as the "ancient course of the Indus." The authorities quoted above indicate the lower course of the Nārā of these maps to be the continuation of Sarasvati joined by the Indus or at least a branch of the Indus. But, the facts mentioned by Cunningham definitely prove that the Indus did flow in this channel till about the end of the 7th century A.D. The statements of the Mahābhārata and that of the early commentator of Amara, therefore, prove that the Indus was looked upon as a mere tributary and the Sarasvati as the main river, in spite of the fact that the latter used to disappear at Vinaśana far above the confluence, in later days. According to Cunningham, the united Sindhu-Sarasvati, i.e. his Nārā, ran almost due south for about 110 miles up to Jakrāv, where it divided into two main branches with at least two more offshoots between them. The easternmost branch, which he calls the Nārā, must have been looked upon as the Sarasvati. It ran south-eastward by Kiprā and Amarkot, near which it turned southward and flowed past Vaṅga Bazār and Romaka Bazār. The most westerly branch now named the 'Purānī' (the old) must have obviously been taken to be Sindhu. It ran south-south-westwards past Brāhmaṇābād and Naśīpur to Haidarābād, below which it

189. Cunningham: Ancient Geography of India, map nos. V, VI, & IX.
sub-divided into two. One sub-branch, which must have been called the Sindhu, ran into the present channel of that river 15 miles below Haidarābād. The other, called the Gunī, turned south-eastwards and after throwing out a branch south-westwards to join one of the mouths of the Sindhu itself, joined the Sarasvati-Nārā above Romaka Bazār. The two intervening streams appear to have separated from the Sarasvati Nārā just below Jakrāv and rejoined it one about half way between Amarkoṭ and Vaṅga Bazār and the other a little below Romaka Bazār. They do not appear to have lasted very long as their courses are only partially traceable. Below Romaka Bazār the Sarasvati-Nārā was lost in the Rann of Kaccha (Cutch). After the Indus (which must have by then been joined by the Pañjab rivers with the exception of the Satluj) changed its course some time before Ālor was captured by the Arabs, the Sarasvati aided by the Satluj and may be some water from the Indus through its old channel, used to reappear above Ālor and flow in the channel of the Nārā (as noted by the Arabs and named the great Mihrān) and join the Rann.

In his *Mohen jo Daro and the Indus Valley Civilization*\(^1\), Sir John Marshall says: ‘Twelve centuries ago when the Arabs first came to Sind there were two great rivers flowing through the land: to the west the Indus, to the east the great Mihrān\(^2\) also known as the Hakrā or Wahindāh. Of these two rivers the eastern one was the more important... Major Raverty, the foremost authority on the subject, concluded that at the time of the Arab invasion the main channel of the great Mihrān followed a line roughly coincident with the existing eastern Nārā Canal, which was once an important river bed. It passed close by the city of Ālor, thence flowed south for some 90 miles and swept eastwards in a curve which carried it west of Umargoṭ and so to the Rann of Kaccha (then an estuary of the sea) and by the Kori creek to the Arabian sea\(^3\). According to him, the terminal course of the Indus which flows by Mohen jo Daro, was then a subsidiary branch of the Mihrān, but its course was not the same as at present. The Mihrān itself, he held, was the chief channel by which the rivers of the Pañjab (including the Citaṅg, the Ghagghar and the Satluj in the east,

\(^{1}\) Vol. I, pp. 5 & 6.
\(^{2}\) Cousins’ *Antiquity of Sind*, page 5; Raverty page 297; *Āin-i-Akbari* translation by Blochmann, Jarret, vol. II, p. 327.
\(^{3}\) Raverty, pp. 156-508.
the Biās, the Rāvī, the Canāb, and the Jhelum in the centre and the Indus in the west) found their way into the sea.... Throughout the mediaeval period and up to the middle of the fourteenth century there were two large rivers instead of one flowing in parallel courses to the sea and that these two rivers divided between themselves the vast volume of the water from the five rivers of the Pañjāb as well as from the old Ghagghar and Citaṅg to the east.... According to Major Raverty, the transfer of the Satluj from the Hakrā to the Biās, the drying up of Hakrā itself and perhaps the breaking away of the Indus from the Mihrān resulted from terrific storm floods, which in the middle of 14th century A. D. overwhelmed the whole country between the Satluj and the Canāb194.

According to Wadia, as quoted by Das195, the western border of the Rann of Kaccha subsided only in 1819 A. D. This means that the Rann was not directly connected with the sea before that year, but only through the Gulf of Kaccha on the one hand and also the Gulf of Cambay through Nal and the Rann of Cambay on the other till that year196. From Mahābhārata-mausala VII & the Purāṇas it seems that the original Dvārakā and the area further inland was submerged in the 36th year after the Bhārata war. The modern Dvāraka is situated in the north-western corner of Saurāṣṭra on the sea coast at the mouth of the Gulf of Kaccha. The submersion of land would have, therefore, taken place in that neighbourhood and it is very likely that the area now occupied by the Gulf and the Rann of Kaccha was solid land about 2000 B. C. according to traditions.

Prabhāsa, mentioned near the mouth of Sarasvatī, is situated on the South-eastern coast of Saurāṣṭra at the mouth of the Gulf of Cambay. The lowest course of the Sarasvatī about 2000 B. C. would, therefore, be along the Ranns of Kaccha and Cambay, Nal and the Gulf of Cambay, the last being in reality the mouth of the Sarasvatī.

These facts prove that the Sarasvatī must have been a very big river at one time even after the Rgvedic age and ran through the whole of the modern Ambālā division, Northern Rājasthāna; Bahāvalpur and Sindh of Pakistan, Kaccha area and Saurāṣṭra to join the western sea near Prabhāsa.

There can, thus, be no doubt that it must have been a mighty river in the Ṛgvedic age when the Sarasvatī and the Arvāvat seas existed.

One verse calls it a mighty stream\textsuperscript{197}. In another verse it is said to have swept away a ridge of the hills with its mighty waves just as one digs out stems of the Lotus plant\textsuperscript{198}. One more verse speaks of its unlimited and unbroken floods moving swiftly with a rapid rush and thundering roar\textsuperscript{199}. Yet another verse describes it as filling the Earth and the wide regions of the heavens with its roar\textsuperscript{200}; still another verse calls it the mightiest of the mighty streams and the most rapid among the rapid streams\textsuperscript{201}. According to one verse, it surpassed all other rivers in greatness\textsuperscript{202} while in another it is described as the broadest river\textsuperscript{203}. The ṛṣi quoted above\textsuperscript{204}, speaks of the Sarasvatī, the Sarayu and the Sindhu in the same breath as mighty rivers, which shows that these three were known to be more or less of the same size and the biggest rivers of the country.

As already stated, Sarasvatī is described in a verse\textsuperscript{205}, as flowing pure from the hills to the sea \textit{i. e.} the Sarasvatī sea. Mahābhārata\textsuperscript{206} locates its earlier confluence with the sea above Rudra Koṭi and Kumāra Koṭi \textit{i. e.} very probably a little below Oṭu. Mahābhārata\textsuperscript{207} also speaks of the Tṛṇabindu lake in that region which must have been a depression left by the Sarasvatī sea. When that sea receded, the Sarasvatī, after flooding the Tṛṇabindu lake, ran further west with a little inclination towards north up to Bhaṭner-Hanumāṅgaḍh and then south-westwards to Dābhīlī, being joined by the Ghagghar above Oṭu and the Āpayā in the Tṛṇabindu lake. The existing old bed of the Vār joins the dry bed of the Sarasvatī on the border of Hisār and Bīkāner districts. Before the days of Rāma

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textsuperscript{197} महो अर्णः: I-3-11.
  \item \textsuperscript{198} इव युन्मेस्विन्वत्स्त्राहृस्तालु शिरिणां तत्वेन्येण्यमिः: VI-61-2.
  \item \textsuperscript{199} यथा अनन्तो अहु तस्त्वेयशचरिष्णुर्गर्गवः। अमश्चरिति रोक्वतु॥ VI-61-8.
  \item \textsuperscript{200} आप्युषो पाषिवानायु रजो अन्तरिक्षयो सरस्वती निद्वयासातु॥ VI-61-11.
  \item \textsuperscript{201} महिन्ना महिनातां अर्थालां समस्तम् VI-61-13.
  \item \textsuperscript{202} विविधा अयो महिना सिन्यर्वया: VII-95-1.
  \item \textsuperscript{203} ब्रह्म गायिके VII-96-1.
  \item \textsuperscript{204} \textit{i. e.} X-64-9. (see footnote 167).
  \item \textsuperscript{205} \textit{i. e.} VII-95-2. (see footnote 16).
  \item \textsuperscript{206} Vana parva LXXXII.
  \item \textsuperscript{207} Vana parva CCLVIII.
\end{itemize}
Aikšvāku the Sarasvatī ran almost due west from Dābhli towards Lakhāsar, whereabout it was joined by the Dr̥ṣadvatī in those days. It then ran past Sardārpūra, Ratanpurā and Muklāvā and fell into the northern remnant of the Sarasvat sea, called the Drumakulya sea, the surviving depression of which extends from about two miles west of Muklāvā to the border of Bahāvalpur for about fifteen miles in that region. At a later period, and probably after it began to be joined by the Naĩvāl (i.e. the Vipaś Śutudrī or Bias-Satīluj) also at about six miles above Bhaṭner-Hanumāngadh, the Sarasvatī began to flow south-westwards from Dābhli and being now joined by the Dr̥ṣadvatī, about five miles west of Baḍopal ran past Sūratgadh, Sardārgadh, Anūrgadh, Vallaḍ-Sardārgadh, Phūlrā, Jambhā, Mojgadh, Dīngadh, Bārā and Derāvār forts, Khairgadh, Bhaglā and Khāngadh etc., reached Camasodhiha about ten miles north of Ālor and joined the Parāv art sea, which had, by then, receded to that place as remembered in Mahābhārata208. The Sindhu (Indus), now joined by the Ārjikīyā (Hāro) and Suṣomā (Sohān) and may be also by the combined stream of the Vitastā, the Marudvṛdhā, the Asiknī, and the Paruṣṇī (i.e. the Jhelum, the Canāb, the Aik and the Rāvī) also joined that sea there, with or without first uniting with the Sarasvatī. When that sea receded further back, the Sarasvatī, joined by the Sindhu and the combined stream of the four Paṅjāb rivers (in case that stream did not fall into the Sindhu higher up), ran further south and joined it there till it had receded beyond Romaka Bazār, after which the Sarasvatī turned eastwards along the present Rann of Kaccha and then, passing southwards through the present Rann of Cambay, Nal and the Gulf of Cambay, joined the sea at Prabhāsa as stated in Mahābhārata209. During this period it threw out a branch called the Sindhu near Jakrāv, which joined the sea further west.

Still later, first, the Vipaś and then the Śutudrī made radical changes in their upper courses: the former ran more westerly from above Hari-kāpatan and joined the combined stream of the middle four Paṅjāb rivers; while the latter ran almost due west from below Rūpaḍ and began to join the Sarasvatī further down in Bahāvalpur area of Pakistan. As a result of the changes in the courses of these rivers and also as a result of progressive

208. Vana parva LXXXVIII.
209. Vana parva LXXXII and Śalya parva XXXV.
decrease of the snow and rainfall over the sources and valleys of the Sarasvatī and its sister rivers due to the disappearance of the Arvāvat and the Sarasvat seas, volume of the Sarasvatī’s water gradually decreased and it began to be completely absorbed in the sand of the desert (left by the Sarasvat sea) at Vinaśana site which must have gradually shifted eastwards and was situated about Sūratgaḍh at the time of the last recension of the Mahābhārata, i.e. a few centuries before Christ. But the stream continued to flow underground and the Sarasvatī, joined by the Satluj, used to reappear at Camasodbheda and, after uniting with the Sindhu and the rivers of the Pañjāb, reached the western sea at Prabhāsa through the Ranns of Kaccha and Cambay, Nal and the Gulf of Cambay as stated in the Mahābhārata and by the early commentator of Amara.

About the end of the 7th century A.D. the combined stream of the Indus and the Pañjāb rivers changed the course and began to flow further west. But the Sarasvatī, still joined by the Satluj and probably aided by some water flowing through the old channel of the Indus, continued to run as a large river in the Sindh province as found by the Arab conquerors.

At a still later period (probably the 14th century A.D.) the Satluj made a further change in its course and began to unite with the Bīās and then the Pañjāb rivers. Probably the Indus also stopped sending any water through its old channel about the same time. As a result of these, and also on account of the further decreased rainfall over its drainage area the Sarasvatī became a very small stream in the Sindh province and finally disappeared altogether, leaving only a dry bed there.

Ultimately due to the alterations made by the engineers of Fīroz Shāh Tughluq and the use of its water in the canals, as well as due to the further decreased rainfall over its sources, the Sarasvatī became the insignificant stream that it is today; so much so that people find it hard to believe that it is the same river that is so frequently mentioned and described as the mighty river in the Rgveda. Luckily its old beds and the evidence of the Mahābhārata and other literature are there to satisfy the sceptics, if they will take the trouble to study them.

The Vinaśana means only the place where the Sarasvatī disappeared usually. The river must have flowed much further in the rainy seasons. It is remembered to have been reaching Anūpgaḍh after heavy rains, till it was dammed at Oṭu a few years back. It still flows up to Hanumāngaḍh
occasionally in the rainy seasons, though it gets completely dry consider-
ably above Oṭu at other times.

At present the old course of the Sarasvati is divisible into five distinct
parts. The lowest is now occupied from below upwards by the Gulf of
Cambay, Nal and Ranns of Cambay and Kaccha. The second, i. e. the
Nārā of Sindh province, has been converted into a canal from the Indus,
which passes through the Allāh Band (a broad ridge of ground thrown up
by an earthquake in 1819 A. D.) and joins the Guni, which falls into the
Arabian sea through the Rann of Kaccha and Koṛī Creek. The third part,
running through Bahāvalpur and Bīkāner districts and known variously as
the Vahindāh, Rainī, Sotrā or Hakāh, is always dry except in its upper
part after very heavy rains. The fourth part, now called Ghaggar after
its union with the river of that name at Sāgrā, generally gets flowing
during the rainy seasons and may have some water above Sirsā at other
times. A few years ago, it used to flood the marshy area round Khaḍyāl
(Dhanur lake) in rainy seasons and after very heavy rains the water used
to flow further along the old bed and occasionally reach even as far as
Anūpgaḍh. A dam has now been constructed at Oṭu and the controlled
water supply is distributed by two main canals. The southern canal goes
towards Khaḍyāl almost parallel to the old bed of the Āpayā from Koṭli
onwards. The other runs along the right bank of the old bed of the
Sarasvati up to Bīkāner boundary and throws overflowing water into the
old bed at the Sarasvati-Vār confluence. The leakage, as well as any
superfluous water from the dam itself, runs into the old bed and often goes
up to and even beyond Hanumāngaḍh after heavy floods, but usually gets
completely absorbed somewhere between Oṭu and Hanumāngaḍh. The
uppermost part, which still retains the name Sarasvati, is mostly dry except
in pools here and there where the water still comes up to the surface. But
it flows as a continuous stream during a good part of the rainy seasons.
The river usually ends in the Sīvan (Dvaita) and Gahorān (Gandharva)
lakes, but after heavy rains joins the Ghaggar at Sāgrā. The real old bed
of the Sarasvati below Makurar (i. e. the Sukrū) also gets flooded after
heavy rains and, helped by the flood waters of the Ghaggar through the
Rangoṭ Canal, its water reaches up to and beyond Hijrāon.

From verses in a certain hymn 210 and from the fact that it was called

210. i. e. in X-75.
the Sindhu (the river), it is evident that the Indus was known to be the largest river of the country. Nevertheless it is the Sarasvatī which has got one complete hymn, sections of five hymns and several single verses in its praise. Besides, it is deified as a Devī of speech, prayers and poetry, as well as one of the three chief household and tribal Devis and is praised in those capacities in many verses and the Āpri hymns of all the Brāhmaṇa clans. No other river, not even the Sindhu, is treated in this way. In one verse the Sarasvatī is called the inspirer of good songs and inciter of good thought; while in the verse just following it, it is said to generate and illuminate with her light all intelligence. If these verses have any meaning, it is that a good many hymns of the Rgveda were composed on the banks of this river. In one verse it is called the best of mothers, the best of rivers and the best of Devis; while in another verse all generations are said to have their stay in it. In still another verse, it is addressed as the dearest of dear streams; while in a verse after it is prayed not to spurn the rṣis and not to let them go away from her fields to places not lovely (like them). Sentiments like these would be meaningless unless the Sarasvatī valley was the original home of the Rgvedic Āryas. At a certain place it is described as the devourer of Paṇī; in the verse following it as the slayer of the Pārāvatas; in the next verse it is prayed to kill the brood of the wily Brisaya who were detractors of (Vedic) Devas, and to give land to the Āryas, while in

211. i.e. VI-61.
212. i.e. I-3-10 to 12, II-41-16 to 18, VII-95. all except third which is in praise of the Sarasvatī sea, VII-96-1 to 3 and X-17-7 to 10.
213. I-164-49, VI-52-6 VII-36-6, and X-64-9 etc.
214. चोदविनी सुनूतानाँ वेदलिनी सुमलीनाम्, I-3-11.
215. प्र चतुर्विंद्र विषयक चित्तो विविष्य I-3-12.
216. अभिविलोक्ते विविलोक्ते विविलोक्ते II-41-16.
217. विविष्य सरस्वति विविष्य यूप I-3-17.
218. प्रिया प्रियामु VI-61-10.
219. माय िशकारी: पायसा मान आ धक्। जयस्व न िश्व स वाय ज मा त्वलयाप्यं रानि नम्न VI-61-14.
220. आ चता दावसं पर्व VI-61-1.
221. पारावताली II-61-2.
222. वेदनिवो निवृह्व प्रजां विविष्य्य बुसस्य प्रास्यां VI-61-3.
223. ातिम्योजनान् विविविवे VI-61-3.
the two succeeding verses it is called the slayer of the enemy\(^{224}\). In another
verse it is described as the sure defence like a town or fort of iron\(^ {225}\). These
verses prove that it was the home river and the last refuge of the Rgvedic
Bharatas in times of difficulty. In still another verse it is said to have spread
the people of the र्षि all over safe from the enemies and beyond her sisters
just as the sun spreads the day\(^ {226}\). This verse clearly shows that the
Rgvedic Āryas spread all over from the regions of the Sarasvatī and its
sister rivers. At a place Sarasvatī is described as the prosperor of the five
tribes\(^ {227}\). As will be explained elsewhere this expression refers to the five
tribes ruled by the descendants of Manu, who were the principal originators
and followers of the Rgvedic culture and religion i.e. the Āryas par
excellence in the original sense of the word. The Sarasvatī could not be
called their prosperor unless all of them lived in its basin in the earliest
known days and were supposed to have originated there.

As already stated, Mānuṣa (named after Manu, the first known regular
king of the Āryas whose memory is preserved in the names applied to
mankind in the Indo-European languages) and Ilāspada (named after Ilā,
the first known ruling queen) of the Āryas are situated on two sides of
the Āpayā, a branch of the Sarasvatī and between it and the Drśadvatī.
According to the same verse, the Bharatas, the most important branch of
the Mānavas, who finally gave their name to the whole of India, ruled
in the same region. The other branches of the Mānavas also ruled about
the same area. A verse shows that there were several kingdoms in the
valley of the Sarasvatī\(^ {228}\). Pṛthudaka (Pehoā) on the Sarasvatī is tradition-
ally associated with the Pṛthus. The river Ikṣumati which will be shown
to be the Rgvedic Vīrapatnī and the modern Sirindhī-Vār, is described as
the ancestral\(^ {229}\) river of the Ikṣvākus in the Rāmāyaṇa\(^ {230}\). In Rgveda, the
Sarasvatī is said to have given milk and butter to Nahuṣa, viz Yayāti, the

\(^{224}\) बृत्तवृजः in VI-61 5 & बृत्तवृजः in VI-61-7.
\(^{225}\) आयसीपुष्य: VII-95-1.
\(^{226}\) विद्वा अति दिवश्च समसूचयः कृतावर्षः। अतवधेऽ सूर्यः: VI-61-9.
\(^{227}\) पंचवतात बर्चस्मिती VI-61-12.
\(^{228}\) चित्त्र इत्यद्य राजा इदन्यके यथे सरस्वतीमनु।
पंजेन्द्रव ततनिद्रि वृद्धया सहस्रमयता ददत् II VIII-21-18.
\(^{229}\) पितुपैतामही।
\(^{230}\) II-LXVIII-17.
son of Nahuṣa; while in another verse, the Pūrus are said to live on the banks of the Sarasvatī. Nahuṣa was the son of Āyu, the grandson of Purūravas and the great grandson of Ilā. Yayāti had five sons viz Yadu, Turvaśa, Anu, Druhyu and Pūru, of whom the first four migrated to other areas while Pūru and his descendants ruled over the ancestral domain. These two verses and one other verse prove that the Ailās also originated from the Sarasvatī valley. The Parsus, descendants of a daughter of Manu, named Parsu, according to another verse, probably lived round about Jīnd (Jayantī) on the Drśadvatī. As will be explained in due course, the name Parasu—(which is the same as the Vedic Parsu) Rāma of Rāma Jāmadagnya-Bhārgava is very probably derived from his association with them and he is traditionally connected with the Rāmahradas at Rāmrāi (near Jīnd) and the Raupya Drśadvatī in that region.

I hope it is quite clear by now that the Sarasvatī was the most important and one of the largest rivers of Saptā Saindhava and that it was in the valley of this river and its seven sisters that the Ṛgvedic Ārya race, culture and religion originated and developed and then spread to other parts of the country including the valley of the Indus itself.

The facts that there were five streams named the Sarasvatī after this river in the east and one (and there is another further down) in the south of Saptā Saindhava, and that even a river of Arachosia (Greek corruption of the land of Rakṣas) was called the Sarasvatī (the Avestic Haraqhvaiti) after it also prove its unmistakable importance. The theory that the river of Arachosia was the original Sarasvatī of the Ṛgveda, is proved to be absolutely baseless by the mention of the other rivers Manuṣā and Ilāspada of south-eastern Saptā Saindhava in association with it in the verses. Scholars holding that view will have to prove the existence of all these rivers and these two places in the north-west first.

Another noteworthy fact is that the country between the Drśadvatī and the Sarasvatī in their middle valleys has been called Brahmāvarta and

231. चूल्ल पयो हुँदहे नाहुवाय VII-95-2.
233. III-23-4. (see Chapter I, footnote 87).
234. पर्सुहे नाम मानवी X-86-23.
235. Mahābhārata, Vana parva LXXXIII & CXXIX etc.
also the northern altar of Brahmr, probably in contrast to Puśkara, another place associated with Brahmr in its south. This Brahmvarta is described as the most holy area in the world. The actual place called by that name, which obviously gave its name to the tract, is mentioned after Arantuka in the Mahābhārata\textsuperscript{236} and is identified with Bramahdat\textsuperscript{237} now called Bedpur (or Umedpur) on the southern bank of the Sarasvati 7 miles north of Mānuṣa. Brahmr represents the creative energy of the Almighty in the Hindu Pantheon. Brahmvarta would have, therefore, got this name because it was supposed to be the earliest site of creation i.e. the earliest known home of the Vedic Ārya people and culture.

All these facts support the idea that the Sarasvatī valley was the original home of the Rgvedic Āryas. That is obviously also the reason why the eastern (Pūrva) sea was called the Arvāvat (this or near) and the western (Para) the Parāvat (that or far) sea.

The Hariyupīyā and The Yavyāvatī. Scholars have doubted whether the Hariyūpīyā and the Yavyāvatī mentioned in the Rgveda\textsuperscript{238} were names of rivers or towns. But it is quite reasonable to presume that they were the names of two rivers; firstly because both are mentioned in the feminine gender in which rivers are usually mentioned, and secondly, so far as I know, towns, with the exception of Mānuṣa and Ilāspada, are not mentioned in the Rgveda by name while rivers are. In the verses referred to, Indra is said to have destroyed the Vṛchivats on (the banks of) these two rivers\textsuperscript{239}. The next verse shows that the conqueror was in reality a king called Daivavāta\textsuperscript{240}. Daivavāta is obviously a patronymic i.e. a son or descendant of Devavāta. Scholars like Wilson, Griffith and others have explained it to refer to Abhyāvartin Cāyamāna, for whom Indra is said to have killed Śeṣa of the Varsikhas in the 4th as well as the 1st hemistich of the 5th verses\textsuperscript{241}. But this explanation is quite unjustified, because

\textsuperscript{236} Mahābhārata, Vana parva-LXXXIII.
\textsuperscript{238} VI—27-5 and 6 (see footnote 239).
\textsuperscript{239} वृजीवतो यद्यिर्पीर्यायां हृद्दैव अर्न्नियसापरो दत्तू VI-27-5 I जिशाश्चतर्वर्मण इत्यथा सारं यथावस्या पुरस्वत अयस्या I वृजीवतो शर्ये पत्यमाना: पात्राभिमिवाना न्यायनिययायनु: VI-27-6 I
\textsuperscript{240} वृजीवतो देववाताय शिश्रनु VI-27-7.
\textsuperscript{241} एतस्य इतिदमित्ते वेनाद्विधीवर्षिकस्य शेष: ब्रजस्य यद्ये निश्चतस्य VI-27-4. वर्षिकस्य शेषोऽभावति नामानाय शिश्रनु VI-27-5.
Abhyāvartin is described as Cāyamāna i.e. the son of Cāyamāna and is further said to be a descendant of ρrθu in the 8th verse242. The patronymic Daivavāta could not, therefore, refer to him. On the other hand, the 2nd hemistich of the 7th verse mentions Sṛṇjaya with Daivavāta, for whom Indra is said to have conquered the Turvaśas243. This Sṛṇjaya is also mentioned in a verse244 where he is described as a Daivavāta. The patronymic Daivavāta in a verse245 must, therefore, refer to Sṛṇjaya mentioned in the same verse and not to Abhyāvartin. Griffith and other scholars have described the Sṛṇjayas as ‘a people in the west of India’. But in the verse referred to above Agni is said to have been kindled in the east246, for Sṛṇjaya Daivavāta. He must, therefore, be a king of some eastern part of Sapta Saindhava. Devavāta and (his father) Devaśravas are called the two Bhāratas247. Sṛṇjaya Daivavāta must have, therefore, been a king of the Bharatas, and very likely the successor of Devavāta. According to a verse248, Devavāta Bhārata ruled over the district of Mānuṣa in the valleys of the Drṣadvatī, the Āpayā and the Sarasvatī, presumably in their middle courses, with Ilāspada as their centre. It is, therefore, not improper to presume that in the early days of Sṛṇjaya’s reign the domain of the Bharatas did not extend much beyond the Sarasvatī valley towards north. In another verse249, Indra is said to have subjugated the Turvaśas to Sṛṇjaya Daivavāta, apparently after the defeat of the Vṛchīvats. As will be explained elsewhere, in the days of Sudās Tṛṣṭu, a successor of Sṛṇjaya after some generations, the Turvaśas lived in the north of the Šutudrī. In the absence of any evidence to the contrary, they may be presumed to be living somewhere in the north of the Sarasvatī in the days of Sṛṇjaya as well. The

242. अभ्यावर्ती चायमानो ददाति दूषणायें दक्षिणार्थवानाम् VI-27-8.
243. सूर्यायाय तुष्वं परादाद VI-27-7.
244. सूर्याये दुरो देववाते समिप्यते IV-15-4.
245. VI-27-7 (see footnote 249).
246. पुरो।
247. अभ्यावर्ती भारता देववाते समिप्यते दुरोष्याये। अनेन वि पश्य बृहत्ताभिर रायेयान नो नेता भवतादनु चुनु। III-23-2
248. III-23-4 (See Chapter I, footnote 87).
249. यस्स्व गायवस्या सूर्यवस्यो अन्तर्द्व यु चरतो तेजिहुणा। स सूर्यायाय तुष्वं परस्पर वृष्णवातम् बिहस्य। VI-27-7
Harīyūpīyā and Yavyāvatī, on whose banks Srījaya Daivavāta annihilated the Vṛchitvats before conquering the Turvaśas, would, therefore, probably be the two big rivers situated in the north of the Sarasvatī. They would, thus, in all likelihood, be the Mārkaṇḍā and the D (Ḍ) āṅghrī, also known as the Umlā.

As already stated, the Harīyūpīyā Markaṇḍā now joins the Sarasvatī by several mouths from about one mile east of Murtazāpur to within four miles west of Pehoā. But there are fragments of its old bed situated further north-west to prove that it joined that river between Behārjacca and Sāgrā in earlier days.

As also mentioned previously, the Yavyāvatī-Ḍāṅghrī (Umlā) now joins the Ghaggar at Tatiānā; but the evidence of its old bed, which runs further south-east from above Tatiānā, shows that it joined that river below Parthā in earlier days. Besides, there is the old bed of the Ghaggar, running further west to show that the channel below this confluence really belongs to the Dāṅghrī, which may, therefore, be described as joining the Sarasvatī below Sāgrā in old days.

The location of these two rivers towards west outside Sapta Saindhava by Hillibrandt and Das250 is, thus, absolutely unwarranted.

The Sarayū. The next river, now generally called the Ghaggar, but also known as Sarayū locally, is the biggest stream of the group at present. It must have been a big river in the Rgvedic period as well. Ghaggar is the vulgar form of Ghargharā, which is also the Saṃskṛta of Ghāghrā, the more common name of the Sarayū of Avadh, while Saryū is an obvious corruption of Sarayū. A river, named the Sarayū, is mentioned in three verses of the Rgveda. In one verse251, it is mentioned by itself but in another252, it is mentioned in the second hemistich after a mention of the Rasā, the Anitabhā, the Kubbā, the Krumu and the Sindhu. The order of description is, thus, from north to south and then west to east. The Sarayū will, therefore, be situated in the east or south-east of the Sindhu. In another verse253, already referred to, the Sarayū is mentioned between the Sarasvatī and the Sindhu.

250. Rgvedic Culture, pp. 156 & 162.
251. उत्त त्या सद्य आयाः सरयोरित्न पारतः। ज्ञातित्वरभाविः। IV-30-18.
252. ote 35).
253. ote 167).
and all three are described as big rivers. It would, therefore, be a big river to the north-west of the Sarasvatī and between it and the Sindhu. In the tenth verse of the same hymn, the rṣi mentions the Bṛhaddīvā, already identified with the broad stream between the Rāksi and the eastern Sarasvatī. The Sarayū is, therefore, more likely to be nearer to the Sarasvatī than the Sindhu. It is, therefore, very probably the present Sarayū or Ghanghar and not the Harayu (Harirūd) of Afghānistān or Sarayū (or Ghāghrā) of Avadh, as opined by some scholars. Both the latter rivers are more likely to have got that name given by the emigrants from the valley of the Sarayū-Ghanghar in memory of the earlier home river.

As stated elsewhere, the Sarayū-Ghanghar now joins the Sarasvatī below Sāgrā through the channel of the Dāṅghrī. But the evidence of its old bed shows that the two rivers ran separately for a much longer distance in earlier days. The same kind of evidence also proves that it ran further west even in its upper course in early days. Its oldest traceable course below Mubārapur, after its emergence from the hills, appears to have run past Dharmagaḍh, Ghanaur, Balamgaḍh, Armauli, Tatiānā, Bādsāhpur, Sadhāranpur, Śatrāṅg and Akālgāḍh, about three miles above which it began to join the Sarasvatī at a later period. But in earlier days it ran separately past Jākhal, Ratiā, Kalothā, Hiṅgnā, Shārdūlgaḍh, Paṇihārī and Kharekā, towards Oṭū, a little above which it joined the Sarasvatī. It might have joined that river about the same place or a bit further up in the Rgvedic age.

*The Śīpāh, The Aṅjasī, The Kuliśī and The Virapatnī.* The next two comparatively large streams of the Sarasvatī group are now known as the Paṭiālī and the Sirindhī (Sirhind Coa of maps); while two smaller streams known as the Sukhnā and the Tagaurī (Taṅgaurī) are situated between the Ghaghar and the Paṭiālī. The rṣi Kutsa, who was a king of the Ikṣvākus before he became a priest and was adopted in the Āṅgiras clan, mentions four rivers *viz.* the Śīpāh, the Aṅjasī, the Kuliśī and the Virapatnī in that order. In the first of these two verses he prays that the two wives of Kuyava, his enemy, may be drowned in the Śīpāh, while in the next verse the other three rivers are said to bestow favours on

---

254. I-104-3 & 4. (see footnotes. 255 and 256)
255. कुयवस्य योषे हृते ते स्वाता प्रवणे सिफाक.

13
Kutsa himself²⁵⁶. Obviously Kuyava lived on the banks of Śiphā, while the Ikṣvākus under Kutsa flourished in the valleys of the other three rivers.

The modern name Sukhnā is an obvious corruption of Śuṣṇā²⁵⁷, i.e. the river of Śuṣṇa, who is frequently mentioned in the Rgveda and associated with Kuyava in several verses²⁵⁸. It would thus appear that the tribes ruled by Kuyava and Śuṣṇa lived in the valley of the river Śiphā, thus giving it also the name Śuṣṇa, which has managed to stick to it in the corrupt form Sukhnā, up to the present. In two verses which describe the battle against Śuṣṇa, Indra (i.e. Kutsa, the protege of Indra) is said to have waxed mighty in navigable streams²⁵⁹. In another verse, Indra is prayed to take Kutsa, the death of Śuṣṇā, to the latter with the horses of wind i.e. boats propelled by sails filled with wind²⁶⁰. It would thus appear that the Śiphā-Śuṣṇā, the Aṅjaśi, the Kuliśi and the Vīrapatnī were navigable i.e. fairly large rivers, in which boats propelled by sails could be plied and invading armies could be taken in fleets of sailing boats. It need not be emphasised that the ‘horses of wind²⁶¹’ used in navigable streams²⁶², can only mean masts of boats, to which sails filled with wind were attached.

The next stream mentioned as Aṅjaśi in the verse and known as Tagaurī or Taṅgaurī (Taugrī in Sanskrit) at present may have derived its later name from Tugra, whom Kutsa conquered²⁶³.

The name Paṭiālī of the next stream, viz. the Kuliśi of the verse, is a recent one i.e. after the establishment of the Paṭiālī state. Its mediaeval name is not traceable.

The identity of the Vīrapatnī with the Sirindhī will be discussed later on.

The Śiphā-Sukhnā, after emerging from the hills, runs past Kaimbvalā and Biśangaḍh and joins the Ghaghar near Bhānkarpur. But the

²⁵⁶. अजस्री कुल्लीशी शीरपत्ती पयो हिन्दाना उदभिषिते ॥ I-104-4.
²⁵⁷. The letter न being as frequently pronounced as kha.
²⁵⁸. e.g. II-19-6, IV-16-12 & VI-31-3 etc.
²⁵⁹. अस्यांवेदत मध्य आ नाव्यानाम् I-33-11 and वि-शृण्यमभिनच्छुण्यमिन्द्र: ॥ I-33-12.
²⁶⁰. वह शुष्णाय वर्ष कुस्य बालस्यादेश: ॥ I-175-4.
²⁶¹. बालस्यादेश: ॥
²⁶². नाव्यानाम् ॥
²⁶³. तुम्ब कुस्याय स्मदिभि च रत्नवम्ब X-49-4.
presence of its old bed close by shows that in earlier days it ran further west past Bhabāt and Banūr, three miles below which it joined the Taṅgaurī at one time; while in still earlier days it ran from Banūr to Thūhā and then past Suhrōn, Narsū and Daun and joined the Paṭiālī three miles further down. Older maps show it as going further south in the east of Sanaur and disappearing two miles south-east of that place. It might have then joined the Ghagghar or the Paṭiālī further south. It was thus a comparatively longer river in earlier days.

The Aṇjaṣī-Tagaurī runs past Kailar, Kuṇjheḏī, Maulī, Manaulī, Motā and Jansiā, near which it breaks into several branches, which run in the north-west of Rājpurā, but after heavy rains reunite further down near Kaulī and join the Paṭiālī near Jorā Rasūlpur.

The Kuliṣī-Paṭiālī runs past Nādā, Dhanās, Daun, Lāndrān, Poālā, Paṅjolā, Kālvā, Paṭiālā, Dhūḍhar, Tarāṅ and Dhanaurī and joins the Ghagghar one mile north-east of Maroḏī. But the evidence of its old bed shows that it ran further west from above Paṅjolā via Lataur, Bakhšīvālī, Jahlān, Tarāvaḏā, Lalaucī, Kāhangaḏ, Sahejpur, Sihāl, Dhūhar, Dogal and Mariāv, near which this course now ends in an elongated and tortuous lake, but used to join the Ghagghar about one mile and a half south-west of Khāṅg. This bed is now known as the Jhambovaḷī Coī.

It may be added that owing to the present very much attenuated condition of the last two rivers their courses are not well defined in the middle parts; that of the Tagaurī about Rājpurā and of the Paṭiālī about Poālā. In recent days the Paṭiālī has turned more westwards from Lāndrān and runs past Thaṅjerī, Majāt Badālī and Balāhrī and disappears a little below the last place. But the old bed restarts near Macli Baḍī about three miles above Poālā and runs as described above.

The last river of the group is now known as the Jayantā devī kī nadi in its upper course and Sirindhi or Sirhind Coā lower down. It runs past Mājriān, Tīrā, Kharaḍ, Baḍāgaon, Kalaur, Sirhind (Sirindha), Bhādson, Bāzīdpur, Cintāṅvālā etc. and is lost near Dharmagaḏ ḍ a few miles south-west of Sunām in Paṭiālā territory. But a continuation of it in the same direction would lead to a bed which is shown as starting about two miles north-west of Roḍī in Hisār district in older maps and about six miles further down in modern ones. It runs past Jhorar, the two Guḍhās, Sāhūvālā, Jodhpur and Khārīyān, below which it splits into three
channels which reunite above Dhūdhīvalī. It then goes past Sidhārpur, Māthūvalā and Banī and joins the dry bed of the Ghaggar-Sarasvatī (Hakḍā) two miles and a half further down. This bed is now known as the old bed of the Vār (War of maps) river. It is locally known as the Bhakhḍā as well. There is now no trace of the bed left between Dharmagaḍh and Roḍī for about 36 miles. It may have been mostly occupied by a distributary of the Ghaggar branch of the Satluj canal that runs in that area now.

This Sirindhī-Vār appears to be the Ikṣumātī mentioned in the Mahābhārata\textsuperscript{264} and the Rāmāyaṇa\textsuperscript{265}.

In the former it is described as a river near Kurukṣetra, where Takṣaka (\textit{i.e.} the king of the Takṣakas) is said to have been living before his defeat by Janamejaya (III), the grandson of Abhimanyu. The Takṣakas presumably lived in the northern Pañjāb with their capital at Takṣaśilā, but appear to have advanced south-eastwards after the Bharata war and invading the Kurus had killed their king Parikṣit (II), the father of Janamejaya (III). It must have been about this time that they had their headquarters on the Ikṣumātī probably at or about Sunām near the north-western corner of Kurukṣetra. Afterwards Janamejaya pushed them back and conquered Takṣaśilā itself with a great slaughter of the Takṣaka Nāgas. Both these wars are described in fabulous forms in the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas.

In the Rāmāyaṇa it is described as the ancestral river\textsuperscript{266} of the Ikṣvākus. The name Ikṣumātī itself is derived from that dynasty, also known as the Ikṣakas. The envoys from Ayodhyā are said to have reached it after crossing the Śaradaṇḍā, very likely the modern Sadādenī and the western Sarasvatī of the earlier days\textsuperscript{267} and entered the domain of the unorthodox Vāhikas (\textit{i.e.} the south-eastern parts of the Pañjāb of India) after crossing it\textsuperscript{268}. The Sirindhī river has been traditionally recognised as the boundary between the Pañjāb and the old Kuru kingdom and the fort

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{264} Ādi parva—III.
\item \textsuperscript{265} II-LXVIII-17.
\item \textsuperscript{266} \textit{i.e.} भिप्पु पैतामही।
\item \textsuperscript{267} \textit{Rāmāyaṇa} II-LXVIII-15.
\item \textsuperscript{268} \textit{Ibid}, 18.
\end{itemize}
of Sirindha (Sirhind) as the first outpost of Madhyadeśa and the kingdom of Delhi towards north-west up to the time of the rise of the Sikhs. The Sirindhi-Vār river would, therefore, be the Ikṣumāti of the two Epics. As it is described as the ancestral river of the Ikṣvākus in the Rāmāyaṇa itself, which means that it was their homeland river before they migrated to Avadh, and as Kutsa Ārjuneya, a king of this dynasty, is associated with the Vīrapatiṇī and its two eastern sisters in a hymn composed by himself, the modern Sirindhi-Vāra (i.e. the Ikṣumāti of the Epics) must be the Vīrapatiṇī of the Rgveda.

The Vīrapatiṇī is also associated with the Sarasvatī. The use of the verbs and adjectives in singular number in this verse does not indicate, as suggested by Griffith and others, that Vīrapatiṇī was an epithet (meaning the Hero’s consort) of the Sarasvatī. Some verses, already referred to above, show it to be a separate river flowing in the west of the Śipā, the Aṇjaśī and the Kuliśī. The former verse, in which the Sarasvatī and the Vīrapatiṇī are addressed together as a single stream, only shows that they united together before falling into the Sarasvati sea. As will be explained elsewhere, the united stream of the Vipāś-Śutudrī is also treated in the same way. Very probably the Vīrapatiṇī joined the Sarasvatī somewhere about Kelanpur a few miles above Oṭū in Rgvedic days, but afterwards ran further west and joined it three miles below Banī as indicated by its old bed.

The Seven Sisters of the Sarasvatī. There were, thus, seven fairly big rivers in the Sarasvatī basin which ran fairly long courses viz. the Drṣadvatī, the Āpāyā, the Harīyūpiyā, the Yavyāvati, the Sarayū, the Kuliśī and the Vīrapatiṇī. Of these, the first two joined the Sarasvatī sea directly, the Kuliśī joined the Sarayū and the rest the Sarasvatī. The Sarasvati may, therefore, be described as seven sistered as is done in one verse and the same idea is implied in another verse which speaks of the Sarasvatī and seven rivers.

269. पारीक्ष कन्या विनायु: सरस्वती चौरपली विषय वातू | VI-49-7.
270. I-104-3 & 4 (see footnotes 255 and 256).
271. e.g. in III-53-9 and 33-5 etc.
272. सत्स्वस्व: VI-61-10.
273. सरस्वत्वक्षबन्धू सप्त सिद्धव: VIII-54-4.
Section IV
THE FOURTH GROUP

The Śutudrī, the Vipās and the Paruṣṇī. The fourth group consisted of the Śutudrī and its tributaries of those days viz. the Vipās and the Paruṣṇī. The former two are praised together in a section,²⁷⁴ because they were supposed to have checked their course and allowed the army of the Bharatas to cross them safely on Viśvāmitra’s prayers. In the second verse they are said to be flowing together, each of them seeking the other²⁷⁵; while in the third they are described as flowing to their common home together²⁷⁶. They are mentioned as one river in still another verse²⁷⁷ and addressed in the singular number in yet another²⁷⁸. There is one verse which shows them to be one river as it makes them say “I shall bend myself low like a nursing mother and yield myself like a maiden to her husband.”²⁷⁹ Again, at another place, where the same event is alluded to, Viśvāmitra is said to have stopped the floods of a river.²⁸⁰ It is, thus, quite clear that these two rivers used to unite before joining the sea as stated once²⁸¹. As already explained, yet another verse²⁸² shows the Śutudrī as an independent river, it being mentioned in the vocative case, with the Paruṣṇī mentioned in the instrumental case as its tributary.

There is not the slightest doubt about the identity of these rivers with the modern Satluj, Biās and Rāvī, though no one appears to have realised that the Rāvī was once a tributary of the Satluj.

It has been generally accepted that the Satluj was a tributary of the Sarasvatī in post-Rgvedic ages till a few hundred years back. But it has been stated that in the times of Arrian it had an independent outlet in the Rann of Kaccha²⁸³. So far as I could trace there is no evidence either in

²⁷⁴. III-33.
²⁷⁵. समारणे ऋषिभ: पिनवाने अन्या बामन्त्रायंयि III-33-2.
²⁷⁶. संरिद्धाणे समाने योनिमतुसंचरति III-33-3.
²⁷⁷. सिन्धुमण्डला III-33-5.
²⁷⁸. ल्बा III-33-11.
²⁷⁹. नि ते नंदे पीत्यान्ते योषा मयज्विव कन्या शहस्वच्छ ते, III-33-10.
²⁸⁰. वस्त्रनासिस्तुमुण्डला III-53-9.
²⁸¹. ब्यां दमुरे रथयें गाप: III-33-2.
²⁸². i. e. X-75-5. (see footnote 9).
the Indian literature or in the old bed or beds to confirm it. All available evidence shows that there were only two main rivers flowing through the Sindh province in ancient days, viz. the Sindhu in the west and the Sarasvati-Great Mihirān-Nārā in the east. The Satluj must have, therefore, sent its water to the Rann through the Sarasvati. According to the Gazetteer, the Satluj was a tributary of the Hakdā and flowed in the Eastern Nārā in 1000 A. D. It adds that the old bed between Țohānā and Rūpaḍ is not traceable but it is known that the river ran a southerly course from the latter place in old days. By 1245 A. D. the Satluj had taken a more northerly course, but again returned to the Ghagghar (in reality the Sarasvati). About 1593 A. D. it again left the Ghagghar and went north. Biās came south to meet it and the two ran under names of the Macchuvāḷī, Hariānī, Daṇḍ, Nūrnī, Nīḷī and Ghārāh. Then the Satluj once more returned to its old course and rejoined the Ghagghar. It was in 1796 that the Satluj again left the Ghagghar and joined the Biās finally\textsuperscript{284}.

As stated in connection with the Sarasvati, the Satluj joined it at or above Camasodbheda at one time in post-Rgvedic ages. There are many nālās connecting even the modern channel of the Satluj below Bahāvalpur and the dry bed of the Sarasvati from Derāvār fort downwards, indicating that the confluence took place at different points between Derāvār and Camasodbheda at different periods. Most probably it used to take place at Derāvār in earlier days and then gradually shifted downwards. It is, therefore, very likely that the Satluj joined the Sarasvati to form the Great Mihirān (Nārā) even in the days of Arrian and that Cunningham is wrong in showing the former as joining the other five rivers of the Pañjāb near Uccā\textsuperscript{285}.

But the area between Derāvār fort and the ruins of Ālor is not the only one where the Satluj could have joined the Sarasvati. There are at present three separate old beds, with four or five transitional courses between them, traceable between the dry bed of the Vīrapatni-Sarasvati and the present channel of the Biās-Satluj. All of them run from north-east to south-west and cannot but be the remains of the old lower courses of the Vipāś-Śutudrī. Each of them starts with a forked head, having two arms

\textsuperscript{284} Imperial Gazetteer of India, XXIII, p. 179.
\textsuperscript{285} Cunningham: Ancient Geography of India, map no. V & VI.
to represent the two rivers; while the north-westernmost in the Fāzīlka
tehsil of the Fīrozpur district has a third arm representing the lower part
of the ancient channel of the Paruṣnī as well.

The third arm of the north-westernmost bed starts near Satkosī
(Dināvala) and running for about five miles south-south-westwards joins
the combined bed of the other two in the west of Bānvālā-Sādhū (Dīvān-
Kheḍā). The fact that it is the third and the westernmost arm of this bed
proves that it probably belonged to a river in the north-west of the Vipāś
and, therefore, to the Paruṣnī i.e. the modern Rāvī, which is the next river
in that direction.

The second or the Vipāś arm starts further east about three miles north
of Ālamgaḍh, near Abohar, and running almost due south joins the
Śutudrī arm at that place.

The Śutudrī arm is traceable for a longer distance. It starts near
Bhagvānpur about one mile and a half west of Malaut and runs west-
south-west for about 32 miles past Abohar and Ālamgaḍh (near which it
is joined by the Vipāś arm) to Dīvān Kheḍā, where it unites with the
Paruṣnī arm. The united bed then runs south-west for about another 15
miles past Rāmnagar in Bīkāner district three miles below which it is
joined by the second old course of the Vipāś-Śutudrī. It is remarkable that
the bed becomes distinctly broader after this confluence also, probably
indicating that the older course was still occupied by the Paruṣnī while the
Vipāś-Śutudrī had shifted far away in the south-east and joined it there.

The spreading out of the bed below Usmān kheḍā may be due to the
fact that the Paruṣnī-Vipāś-Śutudrī, joined the Sarasvat sea at that place
in the earliest days. But when the sea receded, it flowed further south-west
past Rāmnagar as mentioned above.

This course was called the old bed of the Naīvāl river in older maps,
but is not given any name in the later ones.

The second bed starts in the north-east of Ḍabvālī in Hisār district.
The Vipāś arm, narrower and comparatively longer, starts in the neigh-
bouring territory of Paṭijālā and runs for about one mile and a half
southwards with a slight inclination towards east. The Śutudrī arm,
shorter but broader, begins at Jogivālā and running south-west for about
3/8th of a mile, takes a sharp turn towards north-north-west and is joined
by the Vipāś arm about ¼ mile further on. The united bed then runs west-
south-westwards for about 40 miles up to Buglāvālī, then turning west-north-west along Māṇīvālī pass about two miles in the north of Lālgaḍh (12 miles from Buglāvālī) and, then, running almost due west for about another 13 miles, joins the first bed three miles below Rāmnagar. As already mentioned, the Paruṣṇī was very probably still running in the older course, when the Vipās and the Śutudrī had made a great change in their courses, the shortest distance between the two heads of the Vipās being about 40 miles and those of the Śutudrī about 26 miles. This course is still called the ‘old bed’ of the Nāīvāl in Hisār district and ‘dry bed’ of the same river in the Bīkāner district of Rājasthāna.

The united bed of both these courses runs south-westwards to Kadrūḍhānī, about 17 miles from the confluence, then turns almost due west and, running for about another seven miles and passing Berā two miles in the north, ends in the shallow depression left by the Drumakulya sea, which stretches from there up to the border of the Bahāvalpur state towards south-west for about 18 miles.

The Vipās arm of the third main course starts ½ miles east of Lakhvānā and runs a tortuous course first towards west and then south-east for about six miles before joining the Śutudrī arm. The latter starts in the west of Khokhar about nine miles south-east of Dāhvālī and runs west-south-west for about 13 miles before being joined by the Vipās arm about two miles north of Mohammadpur-Lambā. The united bed then runs in the same direction towards Cautālā. It seems that at one time it ran due west from somewhere below Gaṅgākheḍā and, passing Cautālā in the north, joined the second old course at the smaller Morjhanḍā (635). The distance between the two confluences is about 23 miles. This course is still traceable from Morjhanḍā to about a mile and a half east of Cautālā railway station, but has disappeared further up.

At a later period the river seems to have made a further change in its course below Cautālā and run south-west to Ratanpurā. It then turned westwards and passed Dhāolīpāl and Himnūvālā, about six miles beyond which it turned north-west and arrived near the bigger Morjhanḍā (606). In the earlier days it appears to have run further in the same direction, passing Morjhanḍā in the north-east, and joined the second old course beyond Lālgaḍh. But at a later period it began to take a sharp turn towards south-west above Morjhanḍā and ran between it and Mamār.
kheđā towards Gaṇeśgaḍh. It then passed between Bīṇjbailā and Berā and joined the Drumakulya sea in the west of the former place. There are three remnants of this course still traceable viz. in the south of Ratanpurā for about 2½ miles, then from 2½ miles west of Dhāolipāl to about one mile north-west of Mamarkheđā on one side and for about six miles south-west of the same place on the other and finally from about 3 miles east-north-east of Berā onwards. The length of the course between the confluence of the Vipāś and the Śutudrī arms and the union with the second old course near Lālgadā is about 48 miles, while that of the latter course from the same point to the depression near Berā is about 75 miles.

Still later the Vipāś-Śutudrī made a further change in their course about Gaṅgākheđā and, running past Cautālā in the south-east, joined the Sarasvatī about six miles north-east of Bhaṇṭer-Hanumāngaḍh. The distance between the two confluences is 26 miles. This course is known as the ‘dry bed of Naṅgal’, apparently meaning that it was known to be the latest course of the river before it disappeared from this area.

Another old bed, which is traceable only in fragments, is shown further south-east in old maps, but is not marked in modern ones. It appears to come from north and starts at Tevnā Pujāriān in Paṭiālā territory. It runs south-south-west past Jogīvālā and Keval and then turning in a more westerly direction, is lost near Taruvānā. It is again traceable for about one mile north-west of Gudrānā. A continuation of it in the same direction leads to a stump, pointing in its direction, of the third old bed about one mile north of Sālivālī and below which the united bed becomes markedly broader. It has not got any other arm joining it. It, therefore, appears to be an old bed of the Śutudrī only, which joined the Vipāś near Sālivālī. Probably it did not last long and is not given any name in the maps.

It may be added that the Satluj is still remembered to have run close to the old fort of Bhaṭiṅḍā. Apparently it could have done so only when it ran through either the second or the third of the above described old beds.

We thus find the first two main courses and the transitional ones between the second and the third of the united rivers ending in the depression left by the Drumakulya sea, which in its turn was a remnant of the Sarasvatī sea of the Rgveda; while the final bed of the third ends in the Sarasvatī. The first course, which has three arms representing three rivers, which could not possibly be any other but the Paruṣṇī, the Vipāś
and the Śutudrī, has been known to be the oldest course, the second the latter and the third the last. Thus the evidence of the Rgveda is corroborated by that of these old beds and there are no cogent reasons to doubt the accuracy of and to misinterpret the verse.

One may, therefore, unhesitatingly state that in the Rgvedic age the Paruṣṇī (the Rāvī), and the Vipāṣ (the Biās) were tributaries of Śutudrī (the Satluj), which was then an independent river and joined the Sarasvat sea very probably a few miles above the site of Rāmnagar in the earliest days and lower down when that sea had receded south-westwards. Later on, probably towards the close of the Rgvedic age, the Vipāṣ and the Śutudrī made radical changes in their middle courses and, running more south-easterly, joined the Paruṣṇī below Rāmnagar and the receded Sarasvat sea further down. When that sea disappeared, leaving the three remnants described elsewhere, they joined the northern one, viz. the Drumakulya sea, about Berā. The Vipāṣ-Śutudrī, then, passed through the transitional stages between the second and the third courses, while the Paruṣṇī made a radical change in its course from above Lāhore and, running in a much more westerly direction, began to join the mid-Pañjāb rivers somewhere below Multān. Cunningham has shown it as doing so in maps and has also stated that the Rāvī was flowing past Multān from the second to the seventh century A.D. It maintained that course up to the days of Tīmūr, after which it shifted its lower course northwards and occupied what was really the lower channel of the Aik. The Vipāṣ-Śutudrī, on the other hand, moved further south-east and began to join the Sarasvatī six miles above Bhañner Hanumāngad. The latter river also probably stopped joining the Drumakulya sea near Muklāvā about the same time and, running at a more southerly course, joined the receded Parāvata sea at Camasodbheda. It must have been some time after this that the Drumakulya sea got dried in the days of Rāma Aikyvāku.

The first of the above described dry beds being the oldest traceable, it seems very probable that the Vipāṣ-Śutudrī ran in it in the days of Sudās Trṣu. Its two arms unite near Ālamgaḍh four miles below Abohar. The sites of the confluences of rivers, however, shift from time to time and there is no doubt that the site at Ālamgaḍh was only the last before the

286. Cunningham: Ancient Geography of India: map nos. V & VI
287. Ibid p. 271.
rivers moved further south-east. But, in the absence of any evidence to the contrary, it may be presumed that the army of Sudās Tṛṣu crossed these rivers somewhere about Abohar and the famous battle with the Ten Kings took place in the Fāzilka tehsil.

At a later period the Viṣṇus made an extraordinarily radical change in its middle course and going further west in an altogether new channel from above Harikāpatan and along Kasūr and Cūnīān etc. joined the other Pañjāb rivers near Shujāābād about half way between Multān and Ucca. According to the chronicles of the Sindh province, the Biās flowed in an independent channel in the 7th century A.D. 288. It held to that course till the end of the eighteenth century A. D.. Still later it again began to move southwards till it began to join the Satluj near Fīrozpur. Its several separate beds between the northernmost and the present channel of the Biās-Satluj are still well-marked and get inundated with its flood waters after heavy rains.

The Śutudrī too made a markedly violent change in its course below Rūpaḍ. Instead of flowing south-west it ran almost due west up to south of Fīrozpur and then south-westwards and joined the Sarasvati near Derāvār fort. This course is traceable in fragments from Rūpaḍ past Ludhiana to Fīrozpur, then up to a few miles above Guru Harsahāī, then from the boundary of Muktasar and Fāzilka tehsil, with a break near Singhpurā, to just below the boundary of Fāzilka and Bahāvalgād tahāls and then, though less distinctly, throughout up to near Bahāvalpur, below which it is marked as a nālā up to Derāvār. Gradually the Satluj shifted north-westwards from below Fīrozpur, leaving bits of its beds here and there, the southernmost starting near Jaṅdvālā Khartā about three miles south of Fāzilka and disappearing after a course of eight miles south-westwards. Its confluence with the Sarasvati also shifted westwards, till it came to be situated near Camasodhbeta as indicated in the Mahābhārata 289, where the Sarasvati is said to reappear at that place and be joined by other sacred rivers running towards the sea. It is not quite clear where the writer in the Imperial Gazetteer of India imagined the Satluj to have joined the Nārā-Hakḍā-Ghagghar during the periods stated by him. His mention of the absence of an old bed between Rūpaḍ and Tohānā might

289. Vana parva CXXX.
mean that he took the latter place as the site of the confluence, as he speaks of the Hakḍā being traceable up to there. I do not mean to say that the Satluj never returned to the third old course described above during the last few thousand years. Quite probably it did so, as it is still remembered to have flown past the fort of Bhāṭīṇḍā. But the mention of Vinaśana (the site of the absorption of the Sarasvatī in the desert) in the later Vedic literature, Mahābhārata and Māṇava Dharma Śāstra proves that very likely the Satluj had shifted north-westwards as explained above, as otherwise it is hard to believe that the combined waters of the Sarasvatī and Satluj groups of rivers could have been absorbed near about Sardār-gaḍh in Bīkāner territory in the days when Paṅcavimśa Brāhmaṇa was composed. It may, however, be that what Arrian really meant by the Satluj having an independent outlet in the Rann of Kaccha was that it flew in the channel of the Sarasvatī from Camasodbheda onwards in his days and that the Satluj underwent the changes mentioned in the Gazetteer in the last thousand years and finally took up its present course at the end of the eighteenth century.

The Śutudrī thus moved in old days first about 26 miles south-east, then about another eight miles and again about ten miles more in the same direction and finally about 75 miles north-west in a line passing through Dabvāḷī. These changes must have been caused by marked alterations in the configuration of the land in its upper valleys. But scholars, who either misinterpret Indian traditions or doubt their accuracy simply because they upset their theories about Ārya migration into India from somewhere outside in comparatively recent days, have, so far as I know, paid no attention to these physical facts and did not explain them in a rational manner.

The Vipāś is also mentioned in another verse where the car of Uṣas is said to have lain, being broken to pieces by Indra, while she herself frightened, fled far away from her ruined car.290

The Paruṣṇī was famous on account of the war of Ten Kings which was fought on its left bank291. According to two verses292 its valley seems to

290. अष्टोषा अनस्: सरस्वतिपिटादृः विमुख। नि यत्सी शिश्नयद्वे श्रवण-IV-30-10
292. वृषा वृषभिं चतुर्दिकमस्त्यतुपो बाहुम्यों नूतम: शासीवान।
    भिये पर्यामूखमाण ऊर्णि यत्सा: पर्वांशी: सर्वयाय विम्मे। IV-22-2 and
have been famous for its wool. It is also mentioned in connection with a
king named Śavisṭha, the client of Gopavana Ātreya²⁹³.

Section V

The Fifth Group

The Asiknī, the Marudvṛdhā and the Vitastā.

The fifth group was formed by the Asiknī, the Marudvṛdhā and the
Vitastā, which, as indicated by one verse,²⁹⁴ joined together and then
fell independently into the (Parāvat) sea. The biggest of them viz. the
Marudvṛdhā was considered to be the main river and is addressed in the
verse, while the other two are mentioned in the instrumental case indicating
that they are looked upon as tributaries of the former. The expression
‘with the Asiknī O! Marudvṛdhā with the Vitastāʾ²⁹⁵ can have no other
meaning. Of these the Vitastā is identified with the Jhelum, also known
as the B(V)ihāt or Veth, the Asiknī with the Canāb or Candrabhāgā
and the Marudvṛdhā with the combined stream of the two. Apparently
these identifications seem to be correct, specially as the Greeks have called
the Canāb by the name Ak (c)esines, which is supposed to be a corruption
of Asiknī. Nevertheless, there are strong reasons to believe that, though
the identification of the Vitastā with the Jhelum is correct, the same is not
the case with the other two.

So far as I know, there is no other instance, either in the R̵gveda or in
any other early work of Indian literature in which the combined stream of
the two rivers has got a separate name. On the other hand, there are many
examples where the combined stream is called by the name of whichever
is supposed to be its more important affluent. Besides, the combined
stream of those days, joining the Parāvat sea as it did, would have a rather

²⁹³ सत्यमिर्वचा महेन्द्रि पशुण्यव देविशम्।
²⁹⁴ X-75-5. (see footnote 9).
²⁹⁵ असिन्या मश्तुर्वे वितस्तया X-75-5.
short course not deserving a separate name. It is, therefore, very unlikely that the combined stream of the Canāb and the Jhelum would have a separate name for itself.

Besides, there is a tributary of the Canāb, now called the Maruvardhvan, a likely corruption of Marudvṛdhā, which flows from the north through the Maru Valley of Kaśmīr-Jammū State and joins the Canāb at Kiśtvār, and Stein has identified it with that river.²⁹⁶ But it is not probable that the rṣi meant this tributary, as he addresses the Marudvṛdhā as the main river with the Asīkī and Vītastā as its tributaries. Now, the river Canāb is formed by Candrabhāgā and Maruvardhvan and the combined stream is called by the corrupt name of the former, because it is the bigger affluent. But there is no reason whatsoever why it should not be called by the name of its other tributary, provided the latter was the bigger one of the two at any time. It seems that that was the case in the Rgvedic days and the Maruvardhvan, i.e. Marudvṛdhā, was considered as the main river with the Candrabhāgā as its affluent. Hence the combined stream of the two was called the Marudvṛdhā in those days and that is obviously the reason why the main river of the group is addressed by that name. Later on, owing probably to the reduction and then complete absence of the snowfall in the lower hills caused by the disappearance of the seas round Saptā Saindhava, the Marudvṛdhā, like many other rivers in the country, suffered reduction in size while the Candrabhāgā which rises in higher mountains still remained a big river. Consequently the combined stream was called after it, the name Marudvṛdhā being confined to the now reduced northern tributary only. The river was, thus, known as the Candrabhāgā in the days of Alexander. But as its Greek form Xandrophagus meant the devourer of Alexander, it was considered a bad omen and he got it changed to Akesines.²⁹⁷ Akesines being considered a Greek corruption of the Vedic Asīkī, it has been concluded that it was the Vedic name of the Canāb. But, as explained above, the probabilities are that that river was called the Marudvṛdhā after its northern affluent in those days and the identification could not be correct.

The verse shows the Asīkī as a tributary of the Marudvṛdhā and according to the order of narration it must be searched for in the south-

east of the latter and between it and the Paruṣṇī. Now, Mahābhārata mentions a river called the (northern) Āpāgā, which is said to be situated in the north of the Śatadru (i.e. the Śutudrī) and the Irāvatī (i.e. the Paruṣṇī) and to flow past Śākala, the capital of the Madras, also known as the Vāhikas or Jārtikas. This Śākala has been identified with Sāṅglā by Cunningham and Siālkoṭ by others, both of which are situated on the now very much attenuated river called the Aik. Cunningham describes this river under the name of Ayak or Ayek. Rising in the hills to the north-east of Siālkoṭ, it ran past that town and then westwards up to near Sodhrā, where in the rainy season it threw off its superfluous water in the Canāb. It, then, turned south-south-west and ran past Bānkā and Nandanvā to Bhutālā and continued the same course till within a few miles above Asarūr, where it divided into two branches, which passing east and west of that town reunited at 2½ miles south of Sāṅglāvālā Tīhbā. It then ran for about fifteen miles south-west of that place under the name Nandanvā canal before being lost in early days. Its old bed was known to have existed twenty kos to the south-west of Asarūr and it was remembered to have joined the Rāvī in still earlier days. It must have, therefore, been the ‘small rivulet’ of Arrian, near which Alexander had pitched his camp and from which he got water for his army 11½ miles to the east of Akesines and below its junction with Hydaspes. The water of the Aik would have, therefore, flowed for a long distance below Sāṅglā in those days. During the reign of Shāh-Jahān, the crown prince Dārā Śikoh drew a canal from it at Dhakvālā 24 miles above Asarūr to Śikohpurā, which was called the Aik or Jhitpī canal. This cut formed the main channel of the stream. The old bed of the Aik was traceable for some distance below Sāṅglā and again from 18 miles east of Jhaṅg and was finally lost about 12 miles east of Shorkoṭ. In ancient times it used to run much farther and joined the Canāb about half way between Shorkoṭ and Multān. The lowest part of its course is now occupied by the Rāvī which has shifted its confluence with the Canāb from below Multān upwards.

298. Karṇa parva, XLIV.
299. Cunningham: Ancient Geography of India.
300. probably Bhutilaya of Mahābhārata, Karṇa parva, XLIV.
301. Imperial Gazetteer of India Vol. XXII, p. 270.
Modern maps show this river as running up to a mile and a half south-east of Sodhrā-Kopṛā railway station, where its bed is shown as lost for about one mile, but is again formed by a small nālā which joined it there. It then divides into two just south of the railway station. One branch going westwards joins a small tributary of the Canāb about a mile and a quarter below Vazīrābād. During the rainy season the flood water of the Aik goes into the Canāb via this channel. The other branch runs south-west and disappears about half a mile south of Dhaunīkal railway station. It restarts about a mile in the east of Baṅkā-Cīnā (Baṅkā of Cunningham) and is traceable for about 12 miles, passing about one mile east of Kilāske, and is finally lost two miles east of Bhutālā.

From the account given by Cunningham it is evident that it was a fairly large river at one time, which threw its water into the Canāb partly near Vazīrābād and partly between Shorkoṭ and Mutān, where the Rāvī joins that river now. Its lower branch became a tributary of the Rāvī when that river shifted northwards. It was thus in a curious position, being both a short-coursed tributary of the Canāb and a fairly long river which at first joined the same river and then the Rāvī much further down. But it must have been a fairly large river in pre-Alexander days, so as to be able to carve out such a long channel for itself. It is very likely that in very early days, it sent all its water into the lower branch and joined the Canāb only between Shorkoṭ and Mutān. In fact, Cunningham has shown it as such, i.e. flowing about ten miles south of Sodhrā without throwing any branch to join the Canūb near Vazīrābād and uniting with that river and, later on, with the Rāvī further down. But he is not correct regarding the period. The river must have done so long before the days of Alexander. But afterwards it shifted its course northwards between Siālkoṭ and Bhutālā and began to throw more and more of its water into the Canāb near Vazīrābād, reducing its lower channel into a small rivulet as found by the Greeks at the time of Alexander’s invasion. As a result, it was looked upon merely as a short-coursed affluent of the Canāb like the Marudvṛdhā and the Candrabhāgā which formed it further up. It must have been for this reason that when Alexander was in search of another name for the united stream, he selected the name of this tributary, which joined the Candrabhāgā not far from his course, and

303. Cunningham: Ancient Geography of India, map Nos. V & VI.
was more likely to be within his realm than the distant Marudvṛdhā. Besides, the name Akesines is more likely to have been derived from the corrupt form Aik than the Vedic Asikni.

The name Aik in its turn is very likely to be a vulgar corruption of the Asikni, while Āpagā is very probably an effort at Saṁskṛtization of the corrupt form. It seems, therefore, more reasonable to believe that Asikni was the Vedic name of the Epic (northern) Āpagā and the vulgar Aik; while Marudvṛdhā was in reality the name of the later Candrabhāgā, i.e. the Canāb, called the Akesines only by the Greeks and not Indians.

Its mention with the Sindhu in one verse304 also indicates that it was a fairly big river in those days, which supports the conclusion already drawn from its history.

Like most of the rivers of the Sarasvatī group, the Asikni-Āpagā-Aik also rises in the lower Himālayas and must have, therefore, got attenuated owing to the gradually decreasing snowfall and rainfall after the disappearances of the seas like them. Its lower channel has now more or less completely disappeared and it rarely has enough water even to reach Sodharā and join the Canāb through the upper branch.

As stated above, the Vitastā is represented by later Bihāt and the modern Jhelum. It is still known as the Veth, another corruption of Vitastā, in Kaśmīr. The name Vitastā means of the size of a span. It shows that the Jhelum was a very small river in the Rgvedic age. It is not mentioned in any other verse, which means that it was not of much importance in those days. Very probably, it got increased in size with what is described as the bursting of the Satīsar, i.e. the Śaryānāvat sea, in the Nīlamata in post-Rgvedic days.

As explained above, the Marudvṛdhā (Canāb) was the main river of this group and one of the seven independent rivers of the country with the Asikni (Aik) and the Vitastā (Jhelum) as its tributaries. It must have, therefore, joined the Parāvat sea directly after receiving the waters of the other two rivers. As it happens, the country through which they ran in the Rgvedic days is of quite a different type from the country near the shores of the ancient Sarasvat sea. Besides, the Paruṣṇī, the Asikni and the Marud-

304. यत्रिन्धो यदसिकावाय यत्समुदेपृ मस्त: सुनविहिपः ||
यत्सब्रवेतुपुः भेगजयम् || VIII-20-25.
vrđhā have run across the probable ancient channels of the last two and the Vītastā. There are, therefore, no old beds left to give the slightest indication regarding their ancient courses. But as the Śutudrī, the Vīpāś and the Paruṣṭī on one side and, as will be presently seen, the Suṣomā and the Ārjikīyā on the other, ran a much more southerly course in the R̄gvedic days, it is very likely that these three rivers did the same and the combined stream joined the Parāvat sea somewhere in the east of the Samundrī area and that they were pushed north-westwards by the same forces, which shifted the rivers of the fourth and the sixth groups in the same direction. It is known that the Canāb flowed east of Multān up to about the middle of the 13th century A. D. and it may be that it ran further east in ancient days.

Section VI

The Sixth Group

_The Suṣomā and the Ārjikīyā._ This group consisted of only two rivers viz. the Suṣomā and the Ārjikīyā. There is an expression in a verse which shows that the former was looked upon as the main river and the latter as its tributary. In another verse the Suṣomā and the Ārjikīyā rivers are mentioned in that order after the Śaryaṇāvat sea; while in still another verse of the same maṇḍala, the Suṣomā and the Ārjika mountains, which obviously gave rise to the rivers bearing the same names in feminine gender, are mentioned in the same sequence with the Śaryaṇāvat mountains between them. The Ārjika mountain is again mentioned in another verse after the mention of the Śaryaṇāvat sea in the previous verse; while the Ārjikas (i.e. the tribe which gave their name to the mountain and the river) and the Kṛtvas (probably another name of the Suṣomas who gave their name to the tributary and the mountain from which it arose) are mentioned in one verse, after the mention of the same sea

305. आर्जिकीये...मुषोमया X-75-5. (see footnote 9).
306. VIII-64-11. (see Chapter I footnote 129).
307. VIII-7-29. (see Chapter I footnote 131).
308. IX-113-2. (see Chapter I footnote 432).
309. IX-65-23. (see Chapter 4 footnote 134).
in the preceding verse. The Suṣomā and the Ārjikīyā would, therefore, appear to be the names of two rivers in the west of Kaśmir, the Suṣomā running in the south-east of the Ārjikīyā. Again, in another verse,310 they are mentioned after the Vitastā and the description in that verse being from south-east to north-west, they would appear to be two rivers in the north-west of the Jhelum. They would, therefore, be the two largest rivers of the northern Pañjāb.

Unfortunately, Yāska has explained Ārjikīyā as another name of the Vipāś and Suṣomā as that of the Sindhu; and Śaśāna and modern scholars, except Martin, have blindly followed him. The non-mention of the Vipāś, a tributary of the Šutudri;311 is no valid reason, as the tributaries and the sister rivers of the Sarasvatī, the affluents of the Yamunā and the rivers of the second group are also not mentioned in that hymn. It is only from the Paruṣṣi onwards that the rśi begins to mention the tributaries as well, while in the south-east he has just enumerated the four large and main rivers only. Besides, the mention of the Vipāś after the Vitastā will be out of place, as the order of enumeration is from south-east to north-west. Nor can Suṣomā mean the Sindhu, which is mentioned in the subsequent verse. The Suṣomā is mentioned in the instrumental case and the Ārjikīyā in the vocative, which can only mean that the former was a tributary of the latter. The Sindhu cannot be described as a tributary of the Vipāś by any stretch of imagination. As a matter of fact, as explained above, the Vipāś was a tributary of the Šutudri, which in its turn was an independent river joining the Sarasvatī sea directly and not a tributary of the Sindhu through the Marudvrdhā, as it is now. This Vipāś had, therefore, no connection whatsoever with the Sindhu and could not be associated with the latter as the Ārjikīyā is with the Suṣomā or the Marudvrdhā with the Asiknī and the Vitastā. In fact it would be absurd to speak of 'O Vipāś with the Sindhu.' The explanation of Yāska is, therefore, thoroughly unjustified and a result of the lack of correct information. One can easily judge how remote he was from the R̄gvedic age from the fact that he quotes a scholar, surnamed Kautsa, as saying that the R̄k verses have no meaning. There is, thus, no reason to hold Yāska as the final authority; and follow-

310. X-75-5. (see footnote 9).
311. i.e.-in X-75.
ing the order of description in a verse and the indications given by the 
other verses quoted above we must look for them in the north-west of the 
Jhelum and in the west of Kaśmīr. The Suṣomā would, thus, be the Sohān 
and the Ārjikīyā the Hāro, the two eastern tributaries of the Indus in the 
north-west of the Jhelum. It may be objected, that in that case the order 
of description in that verse will be reversed, as Hāro is situated in the north 
of the Sohān. But Sohān is more obviously a corruption of Suṣomā and 
Hāro of Ārjikīyā than vice versa. Besides, as mentioned above, in two 
verses the Suṣoma and the Suṣomā are mentioned before the Ārjika and 
the Ārjikīyā. The Suṣomā would, therefore, be the more south-eastern i.e. 
the Sohān and the Ārjikīyā, the more north-western viz. the Hāro, the order 
of description in the verse quoted above being reversed in their case for 
some reason or other. Curiously enough the same alteration of order is 
found at the end of 6th verse, where the Krumu, with its tributary, the 
Mehatnu, is mentioned before the Gomati, while the order of description 
there, is from north to south. Probably this change of order at the end of 
both the verses is intentional and due to some now obscure reasons.

At present both these rivers join the Indus separately; but the verse 
shows the Ārjikīyā to be an independent and one of the seven main rivers 
of the country like the Gaṅgā, the Yamuna etc., with the Suṣomā as its tri- 
butary in the same way as the Paruṣṇī of the Śutudrī and Asiknī and 
the Vitastā of the Marudvīrādhā and unlike the rivers mentioned in the 
sixth verse with which the Sindhu is said to unite one after another. 
Incredible as it may appear, that is the position revealed by a natural inter-
pretation of the verse. We have, therefore, to conclude that these two 
rivers ran a much more southerly course in Rgvedic days and, after unit-
ing, passed over the area now occupied by the salt range possibly near 
Nammat in Miānvālī Tehsīl (the small lake near which may be a remnant 
of their old course) and joined the Parāvat sea somewhere in Bhakkar 
Tehsīl. Unbelievable again as it may seem, this would indicate an alto-
gether different slope in the country between the Jhelum and the Indus in 
the north of the Salt range in Rgvedic days from what it is today. We 
must, however, remember that the Salt range is not mentioned in the 

312. X-75-5. (see footnote 9).
313. VIII-7-29 and 64-11. (see Chapter 1, footnote 131 and 129 
respectively).
verses and the explanation may be that the hills of this range did not exist as high in those days, but were pushed up from the bowels of the Earth by the same forces which upheaved the bed of the Parāvat sea further south, as a result of which the slope in the area north of the range was reversed and the lower courses of Suṣomā and the Ārjikīyā were shifted north-westwards making them independent of each other and separate tributaries of the Indus.

Section VII

The Seventh Group

This group was formed by the Sindhu and its tributaries and their affluents of those days.

*The Sītā or Sītā and the Śunāśīra or Asitā.*

Some editions of the Rgveda insert another verse between the fifth and the sixth verses of X-75 as it stands in others. This verse mentions two other rivers called the Sītā and the Asitā, which are described as joining together. It is a palpable interpolation of a much later age at least in its present form and Sāyaṇa has not taken any notice of it for that reason. Now in the first verse of X-75, the rivers praised in the hymn are said to be ‘Saptasapta Tredhā’ which is interpreted by some as twenty one, but literally translated means ‘seven three times seven’ i.e. twenty-eight. The hymn, as it stands today without the spurious verse, gives only nineteen names. In case the Sītā and the Asitā of this verse be added the total becomes twenty-one. Griffith and others have read two other names viz. the Śīlāmāvatī and the Ürṇāvatī in another verse to complete the number twenty-one, which they understand to be the meaning of the expression. But the verse does not show them to be the names of separate rivers, but either the adjectives or the local epithets of the Sindhu itself,

---

314. सप्त सप्त ब्रेधा X-75-1
315. स्वच्छा सिन्धु: सुरथा सुवासा हिरण्ययी सुङ्गता बाजिनीवती।
     ऊषाबती युवति: सीलमावत्युत्ताधि वस्ते सुभगा मघुश्चम्॥ X-75-8.
316. i.e. ‘सप्त सप्त ब्रेधा’।
which is the river praised in it. Besides, the above expression clearly means twenty-eight and not twenty-one. It seems that originally there were more verses in the hymn giving the names of nine other rivers, including one containing two names between the fifth and sixth verses of present days. But they were lost and some one, who suspected the fact and knew the identity of the latter two rivers by some means or other, composed this spurious verse and inserted it in place of the lost one. If this explanation be considered feasible, then, following the order of description, the Sitā and the Asitā would be the two fairly big streams in the north of the Hāro viz. the Dor (or Đorī) and the Sīran, which unite together and join the Indus near Turbelā in the Hazārā district. The verse does not show what course they followed in ancient days.

There are reasons to believe that these two rivers are mentioned in another hymn of the Rgveda as well. The deities of a hymn of the fourth maṇḍala317 are Kṣetrapati (lord of the fields), Śuna, Śīra (or the combined Sunāśīra) and Sitā. Scholars have explained the first as agriculture personified or the popular Genius Loci meaning either Rudra or Agni. But in one verse, the Kṣetrapati is asked to pour waves full of honey as a cow gives milk and is said to be dripping honey like clarified butter.318 Such expressions are generally used only for the seas and the rivers in some verses.319 In one verse the Sindhu is described as owning good fields.320 The Kṣetrapati of the hymn referred to above is, therefore, more likely to be the river Sindhu, which being the largest river is very frequently mentioned in masculine gender.

Śuna and Śīra are supposed to be the deities or deified objects connected with agriculture, viz. Vāyu or Āditya (i.e. the sun) according to Yāska, ploughshare and plough according to Roth and plough and ploughman according to Grassman. But in one verse the combined Sunāśīra is requested to irrigate the land with milk made in heaven.321 The

317. IV-57.
318. मुम्मतमृगि शेतुरिव पवोद्धत्तमसु दुभव्।
     मुम्मतमृगि शेतुरिव ......IV-57-2।
319. e.g. for Sarasvat sea in VII-96-5, for the Sarasvatī in VII-95-2 and for other rivers in IX-74-6.
320. सुश्रुषा सिद्धपुरस्त्रः I-122-6.
321. शुनासीरारिमा बाचं जुरेभं यदांवित चक्रबु: पयः। तेनेमामुप सिद्धहरम्। IV-57-5.
milk made in heaven is obviously the water poured by the rain clouds and
the deities which could irrigate the land with it will be some deified rivers,
which would receive it in due course.

Similarly the Sitā is supposed to be personified furrow or husbandry,
but in a verse the rṣi speaks of milching or draining the milk-filled Sitā
for ever and ever322. The milk of the Sitā would be its water as in the case
of the Sarasvatī in one verse323 and the milching or draining the irrigation
of the land with it.

The Śunāṣīra (i.e. the combined Śuna and Śīra) and the Sitā would,
therefore, be the names of two rivers near the Indus and apparently of the
Asitā and Sitā of the spurious verse between the fifth and sixth verses
already mentioned, i.e. the modern Sīran and Ḍor. The combination of
the Śuna and Śīra (Śunāṣīra) like the Vipāṭcutudrī (Vipāś Śutudrī),
and Sarasvatī-virapatnī324 indicates that they united together before joining
the Sitā. The Śuna would, then probably be the Ķunar or may be the
Maṅgal, which joins the Sīran before the latter unites with the Ḍor.

The Vibālī and the Vitasthānā. In one verse Indra is said to surround,
restrict or dam the Sindhu, the vibālī and the Vitasthānā with his
wonderful power or contrivance.325 Literally translated Vibālī means
one whose childhood has passed. Scholars have interpreted it to mean
‘full of water’ or ‘the overflowing stream’, though Griffith has indicated
the possibility of its being the proper name of a stream. Similarly, the
Vitasthānā means stopping or being stopped and has been interpreted as
one spreading her water over the land. Both these interpretations are un-
natural and uncalled for. The words clearly appear to be the names of
the two streams associated with the Sindhu, all three of which were kept
restricted in some wonderful way. This definition fits in with the Indus
and its two comparatively large upper tributaries viz. the Zāskār and the
Śyok (the Śauyook of Max Müller) in the regions of Balkistān in
Kaşmīr territory. In that region they are very frequently obstructed by
huge icebergs like the so-called Śyok dam of modern times. It is, therefore,

322. पयवत्ती हुआमुततरामुतरां समाम्, IV-57-7.
323. एकाशेतसर्स्रवती नदीना शूरियती गिरिस्म आ समुद्राल।
रायस्वेतती मुवनस्य मूरेभुः पयो हुढं ह साहसाय II. VII-95-2.
324. III-33-1 and VI-49-7 respectively.
325. उत सिंधुः विबाल्यं वितस्थानामस्य क्षमी परि व्ष्ठा इत्या मायया IV-30-12.
very probable that the Vibālī and the Vitasthānā were the Śyok and the Zāskār.

The name Śyok or Sauyook is very likely a corruption of the Saṁskṛta Śyāvakī derived from the Śyāvakas, a tribe which might have lived in its valley in later days.

The Sindhu. Reverting to the hymn referred to above, we now come to the Sindhu, which is addressed as the main river in one verse. It was, then, as now, the mightiest river of the land as stated in one verse. In fact, it was recognised as ‘the river’ of the country as indicated by its name. Still, there is only one hymn less one verse and a section of another hymn, where it is addressed as Kṣetrapati, in its praise. The deified Sindhu is praised in many verses, but it is impossible to say whether in these verses the word ‘Sindhu’ means the Indus river or a sea. The probabilities are mostly in favour of the latter. Besides, the word often means a river in general and not the Indus in particular. The only verses in which the word Sindhu may be taken to mean the Indus river with more or less certainty are: I-122-6, in which it is described as donor of gifts and owner of good fields; I-186-5 in which the rṣi speaks of its coming like a mother nourishing her young one; II-15-6, in which Indra is said to have turned its water upwards or northwards; IV-30-12, in which it is associated with the Vibālī and the Vitasthānā and where Indra is said to restrict or dam these rivers with his wonderful contrivance; IV-55-3, in which it is deified; V-53-9 in which it is mentioned with several other rivers; VIII-12-3 in which Indra is said to drive it and other rivers like cars; VIII-20-25, in which it is mentioned with the Asiknī; VIII-26-18, in which it is mentioned with the Śvetāyāvarī and is said to have a golden path.

326. mentioned in VIII-3-12 & 4-2.
327. X-75.
328. X-75-6. (see footnote 34).
329. प्र सु व आपो महिमामूतमं कार्काचारति सदने विवस्थतः।
330. प्र सप्तस्तपं चेचाहं हि चक्रमः प्र सूत्वार्यामाति सिन्युरोजसा॥ X-75-1
331. viz IV-57-1 to 3.
332. सुल्स्मा।
333. शिबृं न सिन्युरीव वेति सिन्युः।
334. येन सिन्युं महीरपो रथाँ इव प्रचोदयः।
335. हिर्यम्बतनिः।
X-64-9, in which it is mentioned as a mighty river together with the Sarayu and the Sarasvatī and X-65-13 and 66-11, in both of which it is deified, with the Sarasvatī in the former and with others in both. There is not a single verse, including those in which it is uncertain whether the word Sindhu means the river Indus or a sea or river in general, in which it is praised or mentioned in such endearing terms as are used for the Sarasvatī in the verses quoted elsewhere. It was, thus, not revered and loved in the same way and to the same extent as the Sarasvatī. It is quite clear that, though the ṛṣi in one hymn describes the grandeur of the Sindhu in picturesque language, he does not express the same sort of sentiments towards it, as are shown for the great river of the south-east in many other hymns. This must be due to the fact that it was not the valley of the Sindhu which was known to be the earlier or the original home of the Ārya religion and culture and the cradle of their earliest pioneers. From another verse its valley seems to have been famous for its horses, cars, cloth, wool, cordage, gold etc.

As already stated, one verse speaks of the Sindhu changing its course northwards. It would thus appear that in the earliest known days it ran more westerly in its upper course and, entering the Kaśmīr valley, joined the Śaryanāvat sea. Some verses read together probably refer to the same period, when large rivers brought their waters as a tribute to the Vajra (bone of Dadhīci or horse’s head) which was lying deep in that sea. But later on, it changed its course and skirted that sea and the mountains around it in the north-east as a result of some seismic disturbances in its valley near Leh. It then began to run in its present channel and, uniting with Trṭāmā and others, joined the Parāvat sea somewhere on the border of the Ḡerā-Ismāil Khān and Miānvālī districts below its confluence with the Gomati wherever that was in the Rgvedic age. Its memory is still preserved in the Kaśmīr valley by a river, probably supposed to represent a part of its

---

336. such as I-11-6, 27-6, 44-12, 83-1, 94-16, 95-11, 96-9 & 126-1 etc.
337. X-75.
338. e.g. VI-61 etc.
339. X-75-8. (see footnote 315).
340. सोदवं सिन्धुरिणिन्महित्वा वल्लरान उपस: सं पिपेष।
अजवसो जविन्निभविभृत्तस्वत्समस्तः तव इत्रद्वरकार॥ II-15-6.
341. i.e. VIII-100-9 read with 1-84-13 & 14.
old course, being called the Sindhu and regarded as the most sacred river of the valley.

*The Trśtāmā.* In a verse the Sindhu is said to unite first with the Trśtāmā, obviously with reference to the northern part of the Sapta Saindhava.\(^{342}\) The first river, which joined the Indus as it turns southwards and enters that part of the country, is the combined stream of the Ghizr, the Yāśīn, the Askoman and the Hunzā rivers, known as the Gilgit. It is, therefore, very probably the Ṛgvedic Trśtāmā.

*The Susartu, (the north-western) Rasā, the Śvetī, the Anitabhā and the Kubhā.* The Sindhu is, then, said to unite with the Susartu, the Rasā, the Śvetī, and the Kubhā in that order in one verse.\(^{343}\) But another verse gives the Rasā, the Anitabhā, the Kubhā, the Krumu and the Sindhu in that sequence.\(^{344}\) Thus, there are two rivers mentioned between the Rasā and the Kubhā viz. the Śvetī and Anitabhā without any definite clue to judge which was nearer to Kubhā except the resemblance in the last syllables between it and the Anitabhā which might indicate their neighbourhood. If that be accepted, the Śvetī would be a river nearer the Rasā and the order will be the Susartu, the Rasā, the Śvetī, the Anitabhā and the Kubhā from north to south. There could be no doubt of Kubhā being the Kābul river called the Kophes or Kophen by the Greeks; while the Trśtāmā has already been identified with the Gilgit river. The Susartu, the Rasā, the Śvetī, and the Anitabhā, will, therefore, be the Daril, the Taṅgir, the Kāndīa and the Barandū respectively, which are the only noteworthy rivers joining the Indus from the north-west between Gilgit and Kābul.

*The Krumu, the Mehatnu and the Gomaṭī.* The Sindhu is, then, said to go to the Gomati and the Krumu, and the latter is said to unite with the Mehatnu.\(^{345}\) But as shown above\(^{346}\) the Krumu is mentioned just after the Kubhā. Besides, the Krumu is more likely to be the Kurram in the north and the Gomati, the Gomal, in the south, as generally accepted than vice versa. The order of description is, therefore, reversed in the case of these

---

342. त्र्ग्नायम् यथम यात्र रसूः। X-75-6.
343. सुस्तुर्वा रसयाश्वेत्य त्या। त्वं सत्तमो कुभं। X-75-6.
344. र्त्वान्तितमा कुभा क्रुममाः 'व: सिक्यो मर्त्यं'। V-53-9.
345. गोमतीं क्रुम भेष्ठत्वा सर्थं याभिरवसे। X-75-6.
346. in V-53-9, कुभा क्रुममा।
last rivers of the sixth verse as in the case of the Suṣomā and Ārjikīyā, the last rivers of the fifth.

The Mehatnu is mentioned in the instrumental case with the Krumu. It would, therefore, be a tributary of that river. It is not mentioned again. The Kurram has got two fairly biggish tributaries viz. the Kaitu, which flows past Mātun, and the Toci with its affluent Mastoi. One of these must have been known as the Mehatnu in the Rgvedic age and probably the former, as Mātun might have got its name from the Mehatnu in the same way as Kābul town from Kubhā.

The Gomati is also mentioned in a verse in connection with the migration of Nārya.347

The Śvetyāvarī. The Śvetyāvarī is mentioned with Sindhu in one verse.348 The name suggests its connection with the Śveta, i.e. the modern Safed range. It is, therefore, very likely to be the Kohāṭ Toī which rises in the Safed Koh and joins the Indus between the Kābul and the Kurram rivers.

The Prayīyu, the Vayiyu and the Suvāstu. These three rivers are mentioned together349 in a verse. This verse is described as very obscure by the scholars; but if, following the example of the Suvāstu, we accept the Prayīyu and the Vayiyu, to be the names of two rivers in the vicinity, all difficulties disappear.

The Suvāstu is, of course, the Subhāvastu of later days, the Soastos of the Greeks and the Svāt of modern times. This river, also known as the Usu in its upper course, rises near Palesar pass and, after uniting with the Pañjakorā, joins the Kābul river near Nisothā. As the rśi speaks of their ford350, it seems that the other two rivers also joined the Kābul river close by. They are, therefore, very likely to be the Bārā and the Tarim rivers, which join the Kābul river about 5 miles above and below Nisothā respectively, and may have joined still closer to the confluence of the Śvāt-Pañjakorā with that river in Ṛgvedic days.

347. यद्वा पुण्डरीकायाँ: कुहुवा कुहुङ्कुंते।
   एयो अप्रतिको वलो गोमतीमव तिष्ठति। VIII-24-30.
348. VIII-26-18.
349. VIII-19-37.
350. प्रश्नेयोर्विषयायो: सुवास्तव अद्वद्वस्तन VIII-19-37.
The Gaurī. This river is mentioned in two verses. It is described in a rather picturesque language in the former. It is said to cut its stream (into several channels) so as to appear desirous of having one, two, four, eight or nine feet and to be noisy and creating a thousand sounds in the atmosphere. The latter verse describes Soma as living or present, i.e. growing, in the valley of this river. It is, therefore, the modern Pañjakorā, called the Guraus or Gourios (i.e. the Gaurī) by the Greeks. The word Pañja i.e. the Sarīskṛta Pañca, probably carries on the tradition referred to in the former verse. The combined stream of the Svāt-Pañjakorā still divides into many channels before joining the Kābul river at Nisothā. The Pañjakorā (Pañca Gaurī) also known as the Yarkhun rises from the Hindukush i.e. the Mūjavat mountains, the Soma of which was highly valued.

The Kuśavā. A verse mentions a river called Kuśavā, which is said to have swallowed Indra when thrown into it by a young lady, but the waters of which were gracious to him and he came out at once. It seems that in the early days the cult of Indra was at first rejected by the inhabitants of the valley of this river, who might have had a young lady as their goddess or queen at that time, but was accepted later on. It appears to be the Choeus or Koeus of the Greeks and the Kūnar of modern days, which is a tributary of the Kābul river in the west of Pañjakorā. The word Kuśavā means one on or near which Soma is not well pressed. The Kūnar rises from the Hindukush (Mūjavat) mountains. The Soma plant must have been growing at and near its sources as well as along its valley. But, as indicated by the mention of the throwing away of Indra by the young lady into its water, the Indra cult was not prevalent in its valley in ancient days. The pressing of Soma would have been either unknown, or if known, would not be considered proper by the Āryas because the juice was not being offered to Indra.

351. I-164-41 and IX-12-3.
352. गौरीमाय सहिलानि तत्स्थलकपदी द्विपदी सा चतुर्पदी।
अष्टापदी नवपदी भूमूळी सहसलाल्प परमे प्रोमन्॥ I-164-41
353. सोमो गौरी अधि भित्र: IX-12-3.
354. समन्नचन त्या युवतिः परास समन्नचन त्या कुष्विता जगार।
समन्नचिदापि: शिशवे मुम्बिच्या मन्नचिविद्रः सहसोविद्रिः॥ IV-18-8.
Section VIII

THE REMAINING RIVERS

So far, I have been able to trace and identify with more or less certainty fifty-three rivers mentioned by names in the Ṛgveda. In addition, the Kṛṣṇāvatī is, as explained before, very likely to have derived its name from the Ṛgvedic Kṛṣṇas and would have, therefore, been probably known by that name in those days also. That makes the total fifty-four. We have, then, to trace and identify thirty-six or forty-five more streams if we accept the total number to be ninety or ninety-nine on the authority of three verses.355 As all the big streams have already been identified, these thirty-six or forty-five must be smaller affluents of the identified rivers and I have not been able to trace them if they are at all mentioned.

As explained previously, there are seven names missing from one section.356 They could not possibly be the rivers of the south-east, as those omitted from that part of the country could not be mentioned in any subsequent verse without breaking the order of description. It must be noted that the hymn was recited at Vivasvat Sadana, that the order of description is from south-east to north-west and that the smaller rivers of the south-east, such as the affluents of the Gaṅgā and the Yamunā, the rivers of the second group, the tributaries and sister rivers of the Sarasvatī, the Vipāś and the other affluents of the Sūtradāri and finally, the Candrabhāgā, a large tributary of the Marudvṛdha, are not mentioned; while even the smaller tributaries of the Sindhu and an affluent of the Krumu are mentioned. It seems that the ṛṣi Sindhuṅkṣit Priyamedha was a native of the south-east, who had gone travelling north-west and on return encompassed his knowledge in the hymn and recited it at the chief centre of his part of the country. That must have been the reason, why he did not consider it necessary to mention the rivers of that region in detail as the same would have been well known to his audience. It is, therefore, quite reasonable to suppose that the missing seven names were those of some rivers on the other side of the Sindhu and possibly of the affluents of the Kubhā, five of which are, as shown above, mentioned in other verses. The remaining two might have

356. X-75.
been the Kalpāṇī and the Capriar, both of which join the Kābul river below Kūnar.

It might be added that R̄jīti, Enī, Rusitā, Citrā, Hiraṇyayayī, Urṇāvatī and Sīlamāvatī mentioned in two verses and supposed to be the names of seven separate rivers by some scholars, do not appear to be so, but only adjectives or local epithets of the Sindhu, the river praised in those verses.

357. X-75-7 & 8.

कुजीतयेनी कती महिला परि उत्साति भरते रजांति।
अद्व्या सिन्धुरपसामप्तमाश्वा न चित्रा वपुषीव दर्शता। X-75-7.

For the second verse see footnote 315.
THE BOUNDARIES OF SAPTA SAINDHAVA

As far as I could trace, there is, in the Rgveda, no mention of any geographical features in the east of the Gaṅgā and the Arvāvat sea, in the south of the northern Pāriyātras and the Sarasvat sea, in the west of the Parāvat sea and the western mountain ranges and in the north of the Mūjavat and the western Himālaya mountains. The Sarasvatī and the Sarayū of the Rgveda are the rivers of the south-eastern Sapta Saṅdhava and not of the Kandhār and Hirāt districts of Afghānistān. Similarly, the Rgvedic Sarayū and the Gomati are not the rivers of Avadh (Oudh).

The mention of the Kīkaṭas¹ is taken by some scholars to mean that the rṣi was acquainted with southern Bihār. The tribe might have lived in that region in later days, just as the Yadus lived in Mathurā area and in its south-west right up to the western sea in the post-Rgvedic days. But, so far as I know, it has not been suggested by anyone for that reason (except of course Pargiter, who starts at the wrong end on the basis of the Purāṇas) that western India was known to the Rgvedic Āryas. The mention of the Kīkaṭas in the Saṁhitā, therefore, does not mean that Bihār was known to the Rgvedic people. The Kīkaṭas being in fact the name of a tribe (Jana-pada) and not of a country, state, division or district in the modern sense of these words, the verse does not prove anything more than that they lived somewhere near the Kuśikas in Sapta Saṅdhava in the Rgvedic days. Nor does the mention of the Yakṣus, in plural number, i.e. a tribe ruled by a chief named Yakṣu² and his descendants imply any knowledge of the river Oxus (Aksu or Akṣu) as suggested by some scholars. The

¹ किं ते कुञ्जन्ति कीकटेषु गायो नाविरं दुह्ने न लपि निपांम्।
   ता नयो भर प्रमगद्धय बेदो नैचाशाश्च मधवग्रन्थया न:॥ III-53-14

² यशवद्ध, VII-18-19.
Yakṣus together with the Ajas and the Śigrus lived in the east of the Yamunā. In one verse Indra, aided by the Yamunā and the Tṛṇus, is said to have subjugated the above named three tribes led by Bheda, while in the other the Pṛthu and the Parsus are said to have gone east, to help Sudās against enemies led by Bheda. The only aid that the river Yamunā could have given would be by letting the Tṛṇus cross it easily, just as the Vipāś Śutudrī are said to have done. It is, however, probable that the tribe of the Yakṣus migrated from the east of the Yamunā later on and settling in the valley of the Oxus gave their name to that river, whose main affluent is still known as the Aksu or Akṣu, while Oxus is obviously the Greek corruption of the same name. This conjecture will be further confirmed if, as is not unlikely, Badakhshis and their chief town and district Badakhshan derived their name from Bheda Yakṣu.

It has already been explained why the Arvāvat or the Pūrva sea of the Rgveda could not be the so-called Gangetic sea of Das or the unnamed sea in Eastern India of Wells. There being no evidence whatsoever in the Samhitā of the ṛṣis knowing of any place in the north of the Mūjavat (Hindukush) and the Himālaya mountains, the conjecture of Das that the northern sea about Sapta Saindhava was probably the sea of central Asia is unwarranted.

The Sapta Saindhava country of the Rgvedic period, by which I mean the age when its physical geography was as described above and when the historical events mentioned in the verses took place and not when the Samhitā was brought into its present form long afterwards, thus, comprised roughly of the northern parts of the Merath (Meerut) division and the Kumāon division of Uttar Pradesh, a good part of the Ambālā division, the Jalandhar, the Lāhore and the Rāvalpiṇḍī divisions and former princely States of prepartitioned Pañjāb except Bahāvalpur, the Jammu & Kaśmīr State, the former North-West Frontier Province and the eastern parts of

4. आवदितं यमुना तूलवस्त्र ग्राव भेज सर्वताता मुपायतः।
   अजायस्त्री शिरग्रो यस्तवस्त्र वत्तिश्शोिण जयृष्टुब्बानिः। VII-18-19.
5. प्राच्य ग्रह्यम्: VII-83-1.
6. इद्वावस्त्र वनवनावर्तित भेजं वनवस्त्र म सुदासमवतम्।
   श्रुताणयं शतुरुं हवीमनि सत्यं तूलसुनामभवतुरोहितं:॥ VII-83-4.
7. III-33.
Afghānistān. It was, therefore, bounded by the Arvāvat sea and the Tibet in the east Türkistān in the north, the Persian Afghānistān and the Parāvat sea in the west and the Sarasvat sea and the northern Pāriyātras (or Arāvalīs) in the south.

The truth of this view of the boundaries of Sapta Saindhava is borne out by the mention of Indra having killed all the enemies of Sudās Trīṣu, the mightiest king of the Mānava Bharatas, in the east, west and north without a mention of the south.8 As will be shown, in its proper place, this refers to the campaign of general conquest,9 carried out by Sudās Trīṣu, after which he performed the usual horse sacrifice on ‘the best spot on the Earth’ (i.e. Ilāspada) to proclaim his sovereignty over the whole country. It was as a result of this conquest that the name Bharatas came to be applied to the Āryas in India and Bharata Khāṇḍa and Bhāratavarṣa to their land later on. But, as mentioned at another place, the important events of the campaign were the defeat of the Śimyus on the Śutudrī and of the ten confederated tribes of the central and north-western parts of Sapta Saindhava on the Paruṣṇī in the north, of the Ajas, the Śigrus and the Yakṣus across the Yamunā in the east, and of Yudhyamadi, probably the king of the Pūrus, in the west.10 The south and further east are nowhere mentioned. It is inconceivable that the Bharatas had already conquered the whole of the modern India to the south of the Northern Pāriyātras or to the east of the Gaṅgā before the days of Sudās. The stories of the campaigns of the general conquest by the Pāṇḍavas in the Mahābhārata and of others in the same epic and elsewhere read quite differently. The only logical inference is that the remainder of the modern India was not a part of the same country with Sapta Saindhava and the Jambūdvīpa, as it then was, was separated from Sapta Saindhava by barriers not easy to cross in those days. These barriers were the Sarasvat and the Arvāvat seas with the then high ranges of the northern Pāriyātras between them and the Himālayas further north. Similarly the end of the campaign in the north after the defeat of the Yadus, the Turvāṣas, the Anus, the Drubyus, the

8. उप प्रेत कुशिकासैतयावकमशं राये प्र मुन्यता सुदासः।
राजा तुथं जनोयत्रामपायूदवब्य वजाते वर भा पृथिवियः॥ III-53-11.
9. दिविजय।
10. VII-18, 33 & 83.
Matsyas, the Pakthas, the Alinas, the Bhalānases, the Śivas, and the Viṣāṇins on the Paruṣṇī shows that the countries to the north of the Himālaya and the Hindūkush and to the west of the western mountains were not known as parts of the Sapta Saindhava. It is, therefore, quite evident that the Sapta Saindhava, as described above, was looked upon as a country by itself and that the rest of later India was quite unknown and unconnected with it.
THE GREAT CHANGE

It may not be out of place to discuss here the events which affected the Sapta Saindhava radically and altered its surroundings and physical features at the end of the Ṛgvedic period to what they became since then. So far as I could trace, the first mention of these cataclysmic and seismic disturbances is found in Yajurveda¹, where it is said that the Lord of Creation saw the Earth under water and, becoming Varāha, brought it up, cleaned it and spread it wide. This legend is mentioned in more elaborate forms in the Mahābhārata² and the Purāṇas, which leave no doubt that it originated in a deluge, as it is clearly stated that the Earth, the abode of all creatures, had sunk under water. The second event is first alluded to in Atharva Veda³ which mentions Nāvaprabhramśana, as the place where the ship of Manu is supposed to have glided down with the fall of flood waters. It is described in detail in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa⁴ in the legend of Matsya, better known as the story of Manu’s flood. It is alluded to in the Kāṭhaka⁵ and is also found in much further developed forms in the later literature. There are, thus, two deluges mentioned in the early post-Ṛgvedic literature, when the land inhabited by the Āryas was invaded by extensive floods sub-merging the whole or at least a good part of the country, barring, of course, the highlands, hills and mountains. This is the only information that could be expected and is available in the early post-Ṛgvedic (the appropriate) literature. These floods are not described as due to downpour of very heavy and extensive rains. They

¹. Taittirīya Samhitā-VII-1-5-1 et seq.
². Vana parva CLXI.
⁴. I-8-1.
⁵. IX-2.
are always stated to be due to the rise of waters of the sea or ocean. They must have, therefore, been caused by the upheavals of seabeds. The Arvāvat sea appears to be the first to be affected. The first deluge is associated with Varāha, whose place is described as a sacred spot in Kurukṣetra. This place is identified with Barāh (Barāh Kalān) near Jind (Jayanti) on the southern border of the holy tract by local tradition as well as Cunningham. It is, therefore, most likely that the first deluge was due to an upheaval of the bed of the Arvāvat sea and must have mostly affected the south-eastern parts of the country. The second deluge was apparently a much bigger affair. The story is too well known to need repetition here. It is described more frequently and in a much more elaborate manner in the later literature. It is associated with Manu, who stands for the whole race and the country. The flood, thus, appears to be more extensive and affected almost the whole of the country this time. It would, therefore, be due to the upheaval of the beds of the much bigger Sarasvat and Parāvat seas i.e. the Ocean of the Rgveda.

The effects of these tremendous and extensive cataclysmic and seismic disturbances on Jambūdvipa would, of course, have come to the knowledge of the Āryas afterwards and are appropriately described in the usual legendary and mythical forms in later literature, of which the Rāmāyaṇa, and the Mahābhārata are the oldest. The latter deals with the whole story. Described in ordinary language, the first event was the depression, prostration or suppression of the Vindhyas or the Pāriyātras, which names in their wider sense, cover all the mountains of the central parts of India. It is said that these mountains obstructed the path of the sun, i.e. the Ārya culture and religion. So the great rishi Agastya went to them with his wife and told them that he had to go to the south and wanted them to lower themselves so as to enable him and his wife to cross them and remain low till the couple returned, which they never did. Thus the mountain ranges got depressed by the strategem of Agastya. Obviously the extensive ranges must have got lowered as a result of some tremendous and violent seismic disturbances, but the event got fathered upon Agastya in legends—probably because his descendants led the first batch of Ārya explorers

6. Mahābhārata, Vana parva LXXXIII.
8. Vana parva, C to CIX.
across the depressed mountains to the southern country newly opened to them. The beds of the Arvāvat and then of the Sarasvat and the Parāvat seas must have been upheaved, causing the two floods in Sapta Saindhava as a result of the same disturbances which depressed the mountains of Jambūdvīpa. But the two events are not connected in the legends because they came to the knowledge of the Āryas at different times, the latter after the former had been associated with Varāha and Matsya and Manu respectively and after the explorations by the Agastyas.

The next stage viz. the partial drying up of the upheaved beds of the seas, is related in the legend of Agastya drinking away the water of the Ocean and, according to one version, then urinating to refill it at least in parts. It is said that after Indra had killed Vṛtrāsura, the latter's followers, called the Kālakeyas or Kāleyas, and indiscriminately described as Dānavas, Dāiyas, Asuras or Rākṣasas, took refuge and began to live in ocean. They frequently attacked the Āryas and killed and devoured them. They are said to have attacked the asylum of Vasiṣṭha (north-east of Thānesar on the Sarasvatī), of Cyavana Bhārgava (on the hill of Ḍhoṣī near Nārnaul) and of Bhāрадvāja (probably somewhere on the banks of the Anumati) and devoured many Brāhmaṇas living at those places. The Devas, then, approached the great rṣi Agastya and, praising him for his past great deeds in dethroning the unorthodox Nahuṣa and depressing the Vindhyaśas, requested him to dry up the ocean. Agastya went to what is described as the immense watery waste and drank away all water rendering the ocean bed waterless. The Devas, then, attacked the Kāleyas and killed many of them, while the remainder fled and took refuge in the lower regions (the south).

The legend obviously originated in the drying up of the more upheaved parts of the bed of the southern (the Sarasvat) sea. The Mahābhārata mentions the lake of Agastya near Puṣkara with Jambūmārga and Taṇḍulikāśrama between them. As already noted, a Purānic version of the legend speaks of Agastya filling up the ocean with his urine i. e. salt water. The lake of Agastya may, therefore, be expected to be a salt one and fairly large in size. The even now fairly large and famous salt lake of Sāmbhar is situated not very far in the north of Puṣkara and on the Sapta Saindhava side of the Arāvalis in the south-eastern parts of the desert. The

9. Vana parva LXXXIII.
presence of several smaller salt lakes, viz. those of Sargot, Rväša, Kucävan, Džväñä etc. in the immediate neighbourhood indicates that the lake of Sambilhar was a much bigger lake in early days which has been gradually drying up. As a matter of fact, as already stated, it was the remnant of the Ujjälaka sea, which is described as sand-filled (in other parts) and near which Dhundhu was killed by Kuvaläsvaro Aikśvâku, an early predecessor of Râma as mentioned in the Mahâbhârata 10 and the Purânas. The Ujjälaka sea, in its turn, must have been the southernmost remnant of the Sarasvat sea. The last remnant, viz. the lake, must have been named after Agastya, because it was first discovered to the Āryas, by his descendants and the saltishness of its water must have given rise to the legend that it was filled by Agastya with his urine. The Jambûmârga [the path to the Jambû country, also mentioned between Cyavanâśrama (Hills of Dhosî) and Puškara in the Mahâbhârata 11 which indicates that it was in the north of Puškara] would be the name of the easiest pass in the Aravalîs between the lake of Agastya and Puškara, by which the first batch of Ārya explorers, probably led by the Agastyas, crossed these mountains on their way to Jambûdvîpa. Puškara is described as the place where Brahmass, the personified Creative Power of the Almighty, performed his austerities and is acknowledged to be the second most sacred place in India after Kuru-ksetra, the ‘Northern altar of Brahmass’ or Brahmâvarta. Barring Kuru-ksetra, it is the only place held sacred to Brahmass in the whole country and has a temple of that deity. There are caves named after Agastyas situated in the mountains nearby. It seems that the first Ārya settlement in Jambûdvîpa, which ultimately led to the birth of the later Hindû culture and race took place at Puškara and hence its importance is only next to Kuru-ksetra, the cradle of the Ārya race and culture, and above Naimişa, the third most sacred place in India. 12 It is thus clear that the legend has its basis in the desiccation of the more raised parts of the Sarasvat sea, which, after the superfluous water causing the deluge had in due course drained away south-west into the receded Parâvat sea, got gradually dried up and converted into the great desert, barring the areas still occupied by the Trñabindu lake in the north-east, the Drumakulya

10. Vana parva, CCI.
11. Vana parva LXXXIX.
12. Mahâbhârata, Vana parva LXXXIII etc.
sea in the north and the Ujjālaka sea, also known as Agastya’s lake, in the south. It must be some time after this stage that the first band of the Ārya explorers from south-eastern Sapta Saindhava led by the Agastyas crossed the desert and then the now lowered Arāvalis via Jambūmārga and settled at Puṣkara, the second and southern place sacred to Brahmā which may in a way be described as the birth-place of the later Hindu culture.

The legend also shows that there was a war between the Āryas and the people of Jambūdvīpa at that time. According to the story, the latter, imagined to be the descendants of the anti-Indra worship enemies defeated and turned out of Sapta Saindhava in earlier days, were the aggressors. It may be that the extensive seismic disturbances, which had elevated the beds of the seas and depressed the mountain ranges, had also submerged parts of Jambūdvīpa into the Indian Ocean and the terrified refugees, who could manage to escape from those regions, and others infected with their terror rushed northwards on to the drying bed of the Sarasvat sea and invaded the Āryas of south-eastern Sapta Saindhava. The Āryas, too, must have suffered a lot during the floods, but, as soon as they could muster strong, they attacked the Kāleyas of Jambūdvīpa in the desert and drove them back to the south. The exploring band of the Agastyas may have been a sequel of the victory.

The story of the desiccation of the sea, though a natural phenomenon, got fathered upon Agastya in the legends, because a descendant of his had headed the southern advance. There are reasons to believe that it was probably an Āgastya, who had led the attack against Kāleyas. The Āgastya in due course pushed further south through the Vindhyās and gradually reached Dakṣiṇa, where they are located in the Rāmāyaṇa and where their head handed over the bow of Viṣṇu, the emblem of Ārya conquest, to Rāma Aikyvāku and bade him proceed further south to Pañcavatī.

The Parāvat sea is not connected with any such legend, because it provided no basis for it. All that happened was that as a result of the upheaval of its bed, the water after creating a deluge in the northern parts of the country drained away towards south and thus the sea got receded in that direction; while any depressions that were left got filled up in due course with the alluvia of the several rivers that began to flow over its old bed in

13. III-XII.
later days. As there is no third deluge mentioned, its bed must have got upheaved at the same time as that of the Sarasvat sea. It has left its memory in the name Sindhu Sāgara for its old bed in the south-western Pañjāb.

As already stated, the legend of Varāha shows that the Arvāvat sea was the first to be affected. But the Jambūdvīpa side of the story seems to have come to the knowledge of the Āryas at a still later period. It seems that volcanic activities continued in the east for a long time. Besides, that part remained marshy and uninhabitable for a still longer period. The Āryas could not, therefore, migrate on that side till a comparatively later age. The story has been converted into what is popularly known as the legend of the ‘Descent of the Gaṅgā.’ It is described in both the epics, as well as the Purāṇas, but as it is connected with the Ikṣvākus, the Rāmāyaṇa version is likely to be of greater value. It is said that Sagara Aikṣvāku decided to perform a horse sacrifice and let loose the horse followed by his grandson Amśumān. But Indra, disguised as a demon, came and stole the horse away. The king ordered his sixty thousand sons, i.e., his tribemen, to go and catch the thief and bring the horse back. They went and searched for it in Jambūdvīpa, digging all over the place and killing the Asuras, the Nāgas, the Rākṣasas and animals living in those regions; but without avail. Finally they came to its north-eastern regions and made extensive excavations in that area. There they found Vāsudeva (which means Agni and not Viṣṇu as suggested by Griffith, because Kṛṣṇa had not yet been born and, therefore, Viṣṇu could not be called Vāsudeva at that period) in the form of Kapila, with the horse standing close by. They took him to be a thief and rushed on him. But the enraged Kapila burnt them all to ashes. Not getting any news from them for a long time, Sagara sent his grandson and heir-apparent Amśumān to search for them and the horse. Amśumān, in due course, came to the place where the ashes of his kinsmen lay and also saw the horse roaming there. He was shocked at the sight. He wanted to offer the usual oblations to the dead, but found no water there. Then searching round he saw the brother-in-law of Sagara named Garuḍa, who consoled him and suggested that he should try to bring the Gaṅgā down to that region so as to secure salvation for his uncles. Amśumān returned with the horse and told the mournful story to his grandfather. After the completion of the sacrifice, Sagara wanted to bring the

14. I—XXXIX to XLIII.
Gaṅgā down but could not find any way to do so. He was succeeded by Amśumān, who, when his son Dilipa came of age, handed over the kingdom to the latter and went to the Himalayas and performed austerities for the rest of his life with a view to take the Gaṅgā down. But in vain. Dilipa too tried to find some way to achieve the object of his predecessors, but did not succeed. Then came his son and successor Bhagiratha, who left his kingdom in the charge of his ministers and went to Gokarna (which could not possibly be the famous place of that name in the south on the Malābār coast, as suggested by Griffith, that region being absolutely unknown to the Āryas in the days of Bhagiratha, an early ancestor of Rāma; but must be a place in the Himalayas near the sources of the Gaṅgā as suggested by the Mahābhārata version) and procured the favour of Brahmā. At the latter's suggestion he prayed to Śiva, who when propitiated, directed the Gaṅgā to come down. The story then speaks of the proud Gaṅgā being excited and filled with wrath at the imprudent suggestion and trying to whirl down Śiva in its overwhelming tide to the lowest depths. But Śiva held it on his head and kept it wandering about in his long and tangled hair, dense as the forests of the Himalayas, without its being able to find a way to the earth in spite of all its efforts, till its pride was tamed and it felt ashamed. In the meantime Bhagiratha again prayed to Śiva, who then bade the Gaṅgā to come out of his hair and descend into the Bindu lake. The Gaṅgā is, then, said to have divided into seven streams, three of which named the Hādinī, the Pāvanī and the Nalini went towards east, three others named the Suciśu, the Saśā and the Sindhu went to the west, while the seventh followed the lead of Bhagiratha. Evidently the first three represent the affluents of the Brahmaputra, the second three those of the Sindhu and the seventh the Gaṅgā itself. In the Mahābhārata version the Gaṅgā is said to divide into three streams which are not named. Probably the author meant the same three biggest rivers of the country which take their rise about the same area. The other two rivers were roped in because the legend was tucked on to that of the drying up of the ocean, i.e. the Sarasvat sea which was continuous with the Parāvat sea and which has been misunderstood by later authors to mean Indian Ocean. But there can be no doubt that the original story referred to the Gaṅgā alone. The poets then describe the further course of that river in the lower hills in picturesque language. In the Mahābhārata, it is said to run in a crooked and tortuous
course in places, stumbling at others and covered with foam as its dress like a woman tipsy with wine. Thus it reached the Earth i.e. the plains and asked Bhagiratha to lead it on to the excavations, which he did. But before it reached them it is said to have flooded the sacrificial grounds of the great rśi Jahnu, who, getting annoyed, drank away all its water in one draught, but let it out through his ears at the request of the Devas. That is said to be the cause of its being known as Jāhnavī. Finally the Gaṅgā reached the vast excavations near the ocean and flooded them, giving salvation to the sixty thousand Ikṣvākus whose ashes lay there. The river was then adopted by Bhagiratha as his daughter and came to be called the Bhāgirathī.

Goressio, as quoted by Griffith in his translation of the Rāmāyaṇa,15 thought that the legend had reference to the volcanic phenomenon of nature, Kapila (one of the names of Agni, the deified fire) representing the hidden fiery force, which suddenly imprisons itself and bursts forth in volcanic effects. That is the only logical conclusion that could be drawn from the legend, specially as Kapila is said to be a form of Vāsudeva i.e. Agni.

It seems that Sagara (who had revived the fortunes of the Aikṣvākus by defeating the Haihaya Yadus,16 the conquerors of his father and the then overlords of Sapta Saindhava) sent his army to explore the new country (Jambūdvīpa) beyond the previously upheaved and by then dry north-eastern parts of the bed of the Arvāvat sea. But they were caught in the seismic disturbances that were still going on there and were burnt in the volcanic fire that burst out probably in the regions now occupied by Vārāṇasī (or Kāśī) area and southern Bihār. They might have fought with the people of the intervening regions before the catastrophe took place. The earlier disturbances, which had caused the upheaval of the bed of the Arvāvat sea and more so that of its north-eastern parts (which had caused the flood of the Varāha, in south-eastern Sapta Saindhava), and the later ones, which killed the Aikṣvāku army, appear to have depressed the land in the east and created deep and extensive pits in many places. They must have also killed a large number of people as well as animals of the affected area. Both these results of the natural phenomena were also ascribed to the army of Sagara. Its destruction, in the way described above, must have

15. p. 59.
16. Mahābhārata, vana parva, p. 106 etc.
caused consternation amongst the Ikṣvākus, specially as they could not have considered themselves quite secure from their old enemies, the Yadus. They must have, therefore, decided to migrate eastwards away from the Yadus in the north-west as soon as possible. Arisumān, the crown prince, was sent forthwith to explore the country, but, though the volcanic activities had ceased, the state of the area must have been awful and the vision of the remnants of the dead must have frightened him. He would have, therefore, returned with an adverse report. The Ikṣvākus continued their efforts for several generations but failed to find a suitable place. The condition of the country would have naturally improved in course of time, the rains and the numerous rivers and rivulets, that flowed through it both from the north and the south, levelling the land and filling up the pits, thus making it suitable for human habitation. Then came Bhagīratha who decided to make another effort along the course of the Gaṅgā. The river was already there long before his time, as it is mentioned in the Rgveda. There could, thus, be no question of his bringing it down from the high regions of the Himālayas euphemistically described as the heaven. But this part of the story indicates that the Gaṅgā did not flow much beyond the Himālayas in early days i.e. the Rgvedic days. It may be that he decided to start from the very source of the river, or what is more likely, the legendarians roped in its upper course to complete the fanciful picture in which they painted the real story. In any case, Bhagīratha followed it, leaving his ancestral kingdom in the charge of his ministers. The Bindu lake appears to be a large depression somewhere in the Himālayas along the upper course of the Gaṅgā. It is mentioned in the Mahābhārata17 together with the Bhāgīrathī nearby the hermitage of Nara and Nārāyaṇa (Badrīnāth) and Maināka mountain. It probably got filled up long ago and cannot be traced now. Jahnu, who is said to have drunk up the water of the river in one draught, appears to represent a shallow but large depression in the later Kānyakubja area, the modern Kānpur district which is associated with the descendants of the Rgvedic Jahnu viz. the Kuśikas, in later literature. This depression might have been a remnant of the old Arvāvat sea, like the Dvaitavana lake further west; or may have been created by the same forces which raised the bed of that sea further north. The description of the Gaṅgā coming out of Jahnu’s ears shows that the depression (which that

17. Vana parva, CXLIV.
river had to fill like the Trṇabindu lake in the case of the Sarasvatī before it could proceed further) extended far more south than north from the place of its emergence. It must have been filled up in due time by the alluvia brought down by the Gaṅgā and the Yamunā, which later, though nowhere stated, must have fallen into it after the destruction of the north-eastern parts of the Arvāvat sea. Bhagiratha would have easily crossed the Gaṅgā and skirted the Jahnu lake in the north and then followed the Gaṅgā along its left bank, till it fell into the sea covering the modern Vārāṇasī division, southern Bihār and Bangāl. This sea is said to have been in existence since æons back and is said to have extended much further in the north-west in earlier days. But it had receded a good deal and, according to the legend, it got extended upward again by the submersion of the land, supposed to have been dug up by the army of Sagara before they got killed by the volcanic fire there. Bhagiratha probably found the tract, later on known as Kośala, Avadh or Northern Kośala, in the north of the Gaṅgā fit for habitation and it was probably in his time that the Ikvyākus migrated from south-eastern Sapta Saindhava as a tribe and settled in that area. The story of migration of Videhas (Maithilās) in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa also shows that the land in the east of the south-eastern Sapta Saindhava (the Sarasvatī basin) was very marshy in early days after the Rgvedic period. Gradually it got dried up to the Sadānīrā river (the modern Gaṅḍakī), the traditional boundary between Avadh and Mithilā; while the land to the east of that river remained marshy for a still further period. In course of time that area too got dried up and the Videhas settled there. These marshes must have been left by the seismic disturbances, which upheaved the bed of the Arvāvat sea, specially in the modern Meraṭh and Bijnor districts and depressed the land further east, the Jahnu lake being probably the biggest of those depressions, as it is the only one mentioned by a special name. It may be, that like the Agastya lake in the south, which was first discovered to the Āryas by his descendants, the lake or marsh called Jahnu was first seen by the descendants of the Rgvedic ṛṣi of that name, who might have led an exploring band either of Bhagiratha or one of his ancestors.

These legends also indicate that the Gangetic sea of Das and the unnamed sea covering the Eastern India of Wells could not have been very

18. I-4-1-14 to 17.
far from Avadh and Mithilā (Northern Bihār), when the Ikṣvākus and the Videhas settled there at different times.

This interpretation of the legends is further confirmed by the fact that the Naimiṣa area in Avadh is considered to be the third most sacred region in India after Kurukṣetra and Puṣkara.¹⁹ This must be due to the fact that it was known to be the second earliest Ārya settlement in Jambūdvīpa and the first in its eastern parts. I have often wondered if the believers of the Ārya migration to Sapta Saindhava from somewhere in the west or north-west and of the origin of Ṛk verses in the Kābul or the Indus valley have ever considered why Kurukṣetra, Puṣkara and Naimiṣa have been regarded as the most sacred regions in that order and why no other place further north-west has been so regarded even in the early literature of the country undoubtedly composed before the Indian part of Afghānistān, the North Western Frontier Province and the Pañjāb of prepartition India were conquered by foreign invaders. The only possible explanation is that the Āryas of Sapta Saindhava knew of no original home except Kurukṣetra in the same country and the later Hindūs of no first settlements after emigration from the original home except Puṣkara in the south and Naimiṣa in the east.

I have selected the Kāśi area or the Southern Bihār for the probable site of the destruction of sixty thousand Aikṣvākus for two reasons. Firstly, because the site is said to be situated near the Ocean and the Gangetic sea of Das and unnamed sea of Wells appears to have covered Southern Bangāl, if not also Bihār, in those days. Secondly, because death at Kāśi is supposed to ensure salvation by the Hindūs, while the offering of oblations at Gayā in Southern Bihār by descendants is supposed to secure the same for the ancestors. These ideas may possibly have originated in the fact that the army of the Ikṣvākus was known to have acquired their salvation en masse after death in these areas when Gaṅgā reached there.

The legends of Varāha, Matsya, Agastya and the Gaṅgā as well as other evidences quoted above, thus, prove that at the end of the Rgvedic age a series of tremendous and extensive seismic and cataclysmic disturbances took place, which upheaved the beds of the Arvāvat, the Sarasvat and the Parāvat seas together with the coastlands of Sapta Saindhava here and there, specially in the regions of the salt range and the lower valleys of the

¹⁹. Mahābhārata, Vana parva, LXXXIII.
Pañjāb rivers causing extensive floods in that country; and lowered the mountains and highlands of Jambūdvīpa, possibly with the submergence of some of its parts in the Indian Ocean. After the draining of the flood waters, the well raised parts of the sea beds got dried or filled up with the alluvia of the rivers flowing through them and the two countries got united to form the India of later days. There is, therefore, no reason to be surprised if we find the physical geography of the Rgvedic Sapta Saindhava quite different from that of the North-western India of later ages.

The fate of the Śaryaṇāvat sea has already been mentioned. It was first reduced in size even during the earlier parts of the Rgvedic age by the alteration of the course of the Indus. Later legends (Niḷamata) show it to have been burst and drained by Śiva and then populated by a Kāśyapa i.e. a descendant of the Rgvedic Kaśyapa ṛṣi. This obviously means that the narrow and the shallow gorge, through which the then small river Vitastā came out, got suddenly widened and deepened as a result of some seismic disturbances in that region, and this was ascribed to Śiva, the chief deity of the snow-clad mountains.

Scholars like Max Müller have thought that the legend of Kaśyapa or Kūrma, mentioned in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, and in the much exaggerated form in the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas, referred to a third flood. But it is not easy to imagine how the story of the churning up of the ocean to get precious things out of it may originally concern a flood. On the other hand it is easily conceivable that it originated in the draining away of a sea, whose emptied bed provided a home which has been more than once described as 'the heaven on Earth,' in different ages and by people of different nationalities and races. It may have, therefore, had its basis in the emptying of the Śaryaṇāvat sea or Satīsar known as the Kaśyapa- (or Kāśyapa) mīra in later days.

Some scholars have connected the legend of Varāha with the draining of the Satīsar, because an area in the Kaśmīr valley is known as Bārāmūlā which, in their opinion, is a corruption of Varāha-Mūla. But the legend explicitly refers to a deluge when the previously inhabited land had sunk under water. There is no evidence whatsoever to believe that the Kaśmīr valley was inhabited before it got converted into a lake. On the other

20. VII-5-1-5.
hand, the Ṛgveda shows that it was the Śaryanāvat sea before it dwindled down to Satīsar; while the Nīlamata also proves that it was a huge lake before it got drained and populated. Besides, Varāha is associated with the southern border of Kurukṣetra in the Mahābhārata22 and, so far as I know, is not mentioned in connection with the Kaśmīr valley in any old literature, though the land of the Kaśmīras and the sacred region of Kaśmīra are mentioned in the Mahābhārata,23 in the descriptions of holy places. It is, therefore, unlikely that this legend had any connection with the bursting and draining away of Satīsar which is ascribed to Śiva. Bārā Mūlā of Kaśmīr must have acquired that name in some other way.

The oldest era, peculiar to Kaśmīr and still current among the Paṇḍits there, is what is known as the Saptarṣi era. It started in 3072 B. C. and probably indicates the date of the occupation of the valley by the Āryas led by the Kaśyapas or may be of the establishment of the first state there. It is, therefore, permissible to hold that the valley of Kaśmīr became fit for habitation by the 31st century B. C. and, therefore, the gorge of the Vitastā would have got widened and deepened some centuries before that date.

22. Vana parva, LXXXIII.
23. Ibid, LXXXII and CXX.
CAMPAIGN
OF
ALEXANDER
IN
SINDH
B.C. 326-325.

64 Miles to 1 Inch
INDEX

Abhimanu, 100
Abhīras, 83
Abhīras, südra, 17
Abhyāvartin Cāyamāna, 94; 95
Ādāśa, 25
Ādāśāna, 25
Ādi-Bādāri Kuṇḍa, 71
Ājas, 129
Agastya, lake, 141
Agastya, ṛṣi, 26; 37; 133; 134; 135; 136; 142
Agastyas, 34; 36; 76; 134; 135; 136
Agni, 15; 28; 30; 75; 95
Ahur Mazda, 23
Aik, river, 82; 107; 112; 113; 114
Aīlas, ruling dynasty, 31; 35; 93
Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, 12; 65
Ajas, 41; 130
Aṅkrā, river, 61; 74; 75
Alīnas, 131
Amarā, 72; 84; 89
Ambumati, river, 69; 70; 79
Arūṣumān, 137; 140
Arūṣumati, river, 47-50; 51; 69; 75
Aṅgirasas, 26; 34; 36; 46; 97
Anītabhā, river, 43; 96; 123
Aṅjasī, river, 97-101
Aṅu, 93
Anumati, river, 50-51; 52; 56; 61; 75; 134
Anus, 35; 130
Āṅgā, river, 11; 62; 64; 65; 66; 67; 68; 69; 70; 73; 79; 112; 114
Āṅgayā, river, 12; 29; 31; 62-64; 65; 67; 68; 69; 70; 73; 79; 80; 87; 90; 92; 95; 101
Aramati, river, 61; 74-76; 77
Arāvali mountains, 26; 27
Ārčika Parvata, 49
Arcismati, river, 76
Ārjika, mountain, 20; 21; 24; 115
Ārjikas, tribe, 115
Ārjikīyā, river, 20; 21; 24; 25; 28; 38; 40; 88; 115-118; 124
Arrian, 102; 109; 112
Ārunā, 23; 78
Arvāvat (or Pūrva), sea, 5; 8; 9; 10-15; 17; 19; 27; 41; 45; 46; 47; 51; 89; 94; 128; 129; 130; 133; 134; 137; 139; 140; 141; 142
Āryas, 1; 4; 6; 12; 14; 15; 23; 27; 41; 91; 92; 94; 125; 128; 130; 132; 133; 134; 135; 136; 137; 138; 141; 142
Āryāvarta, 25; 82
Āsan, river, 43
Asikni, river, 38; 40; 88; 110-115; 117; 121
Askoman, river, 123
Āśmanvati, 42-43
Āśmī (or Assan), river, 43
Asunīti, river, 52; 61
Āśvins, 4; 9; 10; 11; 15; 17; 44; 45; 46
Atharva Veda, 25; 58; 61; 72; 132
Ātreyā, clan, 45
Atri, ṛṣi, 35; 45; 46; 75
Atri Bhauma, ṛṣi, 45
Atris, 34; 46; 76
Auṣīja, king, 45
Auṣījas, clan, 46
Avesta, 23; 39
Āyu, king, 93
Badakhshis, 129
Bahlikas, 25
Bān-gaṅgā, 47
Bārā, river, 124
Barandū, river, 123
Baudhāyana Dharma Sūtra, 81
Beton, stream, 74; 77
Bhāgīratha, 138; 139; 140
Bhāgīrathī, (Gaṅgā) 139; 140
Bhāgīrathī-Hugli, 16
Bhakhḍā, river, 100
Bhalānases, 131
Bhānumati, river, 50; 76
Bhāradvāja, 76; 134
Bhāradvājas, 45; 75
Bharata khandha, 130
Bharatas, 12; 30; 33; 34; 35; 53; 65; 92; 102; 130
Bhāratavarṣa, 130
Bhārati (also known as Mahī), devi, 12; 34
Bhārati tirtha, holy place, 35
Bhedā yaksu, 129
Bhṛgu, ṛṣi, 49
Bhṛgus, 30; 36
Bhūjju Taugra, 2
Biāś, river, 38; 39; 82; 86; 89; 102; 107; 108
Bīhār, river, 114
Bindu lake, 138; 140
Bōli, river, 57; 58
Brahmā, 94; 135; 136; 138
Brahmaputra, 138
Brahmāvarta, 32; 93; 94; 135
Brhaddēvī, river, 59; 61-62; 76; 97
Brhospati, 45; 75
Brhospati Āṅgirasa, king, 45; 46; 51; 52; 76
Brisaya, 91
Canāb, river, 82; 86; 110; 111; 112; 113; 114; 115
Candra Kūpa (or Candra Tirtha), 49
Candrabhāgā, river, 111; 113; 126
Capriar, river, 127
Catāṅg, river, 12; 42; 54; 55; 56; 57; 59; 60; 62; 63; 64; 66; 68; 69; 71; 72; 84; 85
Caturāṅga, river, 68; 69; 70; 71; 73; 84
Cunningham, 13; 55; 41; 42; 47; 48; 51; 53; 54; 56; 59; 60; 62; 64; 65; 67; 69; 70; 71; 77; 79; 84; 103; 107; 112; 113; 133
Cyavana (Ṛgvedic Cyavāna), sage, 48; 134
Dadhīcī, 19; 20; 23; 122
Daivavāta, king, 94; 95
Dakṣa, 31
Ḍaṇḍ, river, 103
Ḍ (T) āṅghrī, river, 79; 80; 96
Darbhī, 23
Daril, river, 123
Das, 12; 31; 35; 53; 62; 86; 96; 129; 141; 142
Dasyu Ābhiras, 17; 82
Devāśravas, king, 95
Devavāta Bhārata, 30; 53; 94
Dhosti, hill, 49
Dhundahār, 17
Dhundhu 17; 135
Dhvasan Dvaitavana, king, 13
Dilipa, 138
Dīptoda, holy place, 49
Divodāsa Atithigya Bhārata, 58
Divyā Paulomā, wife of Bhṛgu, 48
Dor, (or Dori), 119; 120
Drapsa, King, 47
Drṣadvatī, river, 12; 14; 29; 31; 32; 41; 42; 43; 51; 53-58; 59; 60; 62; 64; 65; 66; 67; 68; 70; 84; 88; 92; 93; 95; 101
Druhyus, 35; 93; 130
Drumakulya, sea, 17; 18; 82; 83; 88; 105; 106; 107; 135
Duhān, river, 13; 49; 50; 51
Duṣyanta, 23
Dvaitavana, lake, 13; 14; 18; 140
Epics, on seven seas, 8
Firoz Shāh Tughluq, 42; 53; 56; 57; 62; 71; 89
Gādhī, ṛṣi, 65; 66
Gāndhārī, 25
Gaṅgā of Mṛgduḥmā, (Mandākini Gaṅgā), river, 67; 69
Gaṅgā, river, 5; 12; 14; 15; 16; 22; 26; 40-41; 46; 79; 117; 126; 130; 137; 138; 139; 140; 141; 142
Gaṅgā Sāgara, 15
Garonmāna, mountain, 23
Garuda, 137
Gauri, river, 125
Gautama Angirases, 76
Ghaggar, river, 18; 53; 63; 64; 79; 80; 83; 85; 86; 87; 90; 96; 97; 98; 99; 100; 103; 108
Ghārāh, river, 103
Ghizr, river, 123
Gilgit, river, 123
Giri Gaṅgā, river, 43
Gokarna, 138
Gomal, river, 123
Gomatī, river, 117; 122; 123-124; 128
Gopavana Ātreya, ṛṣi, 110
Gorespio, 139
Gotama Rāhugna Āṅgiras, ṛṣi, 37
Grassman, 119
Great Mihrān, 84; 85; 86; 103
Griffith, 61; 66; 80; 94; 95; 101; 120; 137; 138; 139
Grītsamada Sauakaka-Bhārgava, ṛṣi, 22; 35; 76
Gulf of Cambay, 86; 88; 89; 90
Gulf of Kaccha, 86
Guṅgū, river, 58; 75
Guṅgūs, tribe, 58
Guni, river, 85
Haihaya yadus, tribe, 139
Hakdā, river, 103; 108; 109
Hakrā (Hakdā or Vahindāh), river, 84; 86
Hara Berezaiti (Haraiti or Hara), mountain, 23
Harayu (Harirūd), river, 97
Hariāni, river, 103
Hārīscandra, 66
Hariyūpiyā, river, 94-96; 101
Hārō, river, 20; 117; 119
Havismatī, river, 51; 76
Hillibrandt, 96
Himalayas, mountains, 8; 15; 26; 41; 128; 129; 130; 131; 138; 140
Hindukush, mountains, 25
Hiraṅyavatī, river, 58; 65; 66; 68; 70
Hlādinī, river, 138
Hunzā, river, 123
Ikṣumati, river, 92; 100; 101
Ikṣvākus, 98; 100; 101; 137; 139; 140; 142
Ilā, devi, 31; 33; 34; 35
Ilāyāspada (also called Ilāspada or Ilaspada), town, 30-33; 35; 53; 62; 63; 92; 130
Indorī, 47
Indra, 5; 9; 15; 19; 22; 29; 33; 39; 46; 94; 95; 98; 120; 121; 125; 129; 130; 134; 137
Indus, river, 4; 5; 11; 16; 22; 25; 38; 45; 61; 82; 84; 85; 86; 89; 90; 91; 93; 117; 119; 120; 121; 122; 123; 124; 143
Irāvāti, river, 112
Jāhnavi, (Gaṅgā), 139
Jahnu, lake, 141
Jahnu, ṛṣi, 139; 140
Jamadagni, 36
Jamadagnis, 34
Jambūdvipa, 47; 130; 133; 134; 135; 136; 137; 139; 142; 143
Jambūmārga, 135, 136
Janamejaya (111), king, 100
Jayāditya, 72
Jayantā devī kī nadi, river, 99
Jhelum, river, 25; 39; 82; 86; 110; 111; 114; 116; 117
Kābul, river, 124; 125; 127
Kaitu, river, 124
Kālakaṇyas, (or Kāleyas), 134; 136
Kalla, 6
Kalpānī, river, 127
Kāmyaka, forest, 14; 18
Kaṅcanākṣi, river, 78
Kāndīa river, 123
Kaṇvas (adopted Āṅgirases), 34; 36
Kapila, 137; 139
Karaṇja, king, 58
Kaśāvanti, (also Kaśāvatī), river, 48
Kaśyapa, clan, 21
Kaśyapa (or Kūrma; legend) 143
Kaśyapa ṛṣi 143
Kaśyapas, 34; 76; 144
Kāṭhaka, 132
Kauśikī, river, 60; 64; 65-67; 68; 69; 70
Kauśita, Scholar, 116
Khāṇḍ, river, 73; 74
Kikaṭas, tribe, 128
Kohāṭ Toi, river, 124
Krṣṇā Draupadī Pāṇcāli, 50
Krṣṇa Dvaiḍyana Pārāśara Vāsiṣṭha (popularly known as Vedavyāsa or briefly Vyāsa) 49
Krṣṇa, dynasty, 47
Krṣṇā, queen, 49
Krṣṇas, 75
Krṣṇa Vāsudeva Vārṣneya-Yādava (The Lord Krṣṇa) 50
Krṣṇavatī, river, 13; 48; 49; 50; 51; 126
Krīḍvas, 20; 115
Krumu, river, 43; 96; 117; 123-124; 126
Kullah, river, 38; 43; 96; 123; 126
Kuhū, 58
Kulisī, river, 97-101
Kumāra Koṭi, 83; 87
Kurram, river, 123; 124
Kuruksetra, 23; 32; 49; 53; 54; 56; 59; 63; 64; 65; 66; 67; 68; 69; 70; 71; 74; 79; 81; 100; 133; 135; 142; 144
Kurus, 100
Kuṣavā (Choeus, Koeus, Kūnar) river, 125
Kuṣikas, 140
Kutsa, king, 46; 97; 98; 101
Kuvalayāśva Aikvyāku (also known as Dhundhumāra), 17; 135
Kuyava, king, 97; 98
Lake of Agastya (Sāmbhara); 18
Lāṭyāyana Śrauta Śūtra, 81
Lüdwig, 61
Lūnī, river, 79

Macchuvālī, river, 103
Madhuśravā, river, 60; 67; 68; 69; 70
Mahābhārata, 11; 13; 14; 16; 17; 18; 19; 23; 32; 33; 38; 48; 49; 53; 57; 58; 60; 62; 64; 65; 67; 69; 76; 77; 78; 80; 81; 82; 83; 84; 86; 87; 88; 89; 94; 100; 108; 109; 112; 130; 132; 133; 134; 135; 138; 140; 143; 144
Mahāmatī, river, 76
Mahāvṛṣas, 25
Māhiṣmatī, river, 76
Maināka, mountain, 140
Mānava Bharatas, 39; 130
Mānava Dharma Śāstra, 81; 109
Mānvas, 31
Maṅgal, river, 120
Manoramā, river, 78
Manu, 31; 33; 39; 92; 132; 133; 134
Manuṣa, (town and river), 30-33; 53; 62; 63; 92; 93; 94
Manuṣas, tribe, 31; 39
Mārkanḍā, river, 72; 76; 77; 78; 79; 96
Marshall, Sir John, 85
Marudvyāhā, river, 28; 38; 40; 88; 110-115; 116; 117; 126
Maruts, 45
Maruvardhvan, river, 111
Mastoī, river, 124
Mātarīśvan Bhārgava, 33
Mātri, 79
Matsya, (legend of; Manu’s flood) 132; 134; 142
Matsyas, 50; 131
Max Müller, 3; 6; 120; 143
Medhyātithi Kāṇva, ṛṣi, 44
Mehatnu 117; 123-124
Mūjavatar, (Hindūkush) mountain, 25; 125; 128; 129; 131
Mūjavats, tribe, 25

Nābhāka Kāṇva, ṛṣi, 39
Nahuṣa, king, 92; 93; 134
Naī, river, 13; 14; 48; 50; 51; 56; 59
Naimīṣa, 135; 142
Naivāl, river, 88; 104; 105; 106
Naṣaṅghā, lake, 12; 14; 47; 48; 51
Nal, 89; 90
Nalinī, river, 138
Nārā, river, 84; 85; 90; 103; 108
Nara and Nārāyaṇa, (Badrinath), 140
Nārya 124
Nilmata, 21; 23; 143; 144
Nilī, river, 103
Nīgādas, king, 82; 83
Nūrī, river, 103
Oghavaṭi, river, 78; 79
Oromenus, 26
Oxus (Aksu or Akṣu) river, 128; 129
Pakhthas, 131
Paṅcavaṭi, 136
Paṅcavīṁśa Brāhmaṇa, 81; 109
Pāṇḍava, 13; 14; 18; 130
Pañjakorā (also known as yarkhun)
river, 124; 125
Paṇini, 72
Paṇis, 26; 41; 45; 46; 51
Parāśarāstra, 49
Parāvat (or Para), sea, 2; 5; 8; 9;
10; 15-16; 17; 18; 19; 26; 28;
29; 83; 88; 94; 107; 110; 114;
115; 117; 118; 122; 128; 133;
134; 135; 136; 138; 142
Pargiter, 128
Parīṣit (11), king, 100
Pāriyātras, northern, (or Arāvalīs)
mountains, 8; 13; 14; 15; 26-27;
46; 47; 48; 128; 130
Parīṇaya, king, 58
Parṣu, 93
Parṣus, 93; 129
Paruṇaṭi, river, 28; 38; 40; 88;
102-110; 112; 114; 115; 116;
117; 130; 131
Paṭākī, river, 97; 98; 99
Pāvana, lake, 63; 69
Pāvani, river, 138
Phalāki, forest, 64
Pischel, Scholar, 34
Pravara, ṣṭi, 46
Prayiyu, river, 124
Pṛthu, king, 95
Pṛthus, 92; 129
Puraṇas, 8; 17; 26; 86; 100; 128;
132; 135; 137; 143
Purāṇi, river, 84
Pūru, 93
Puruṇavas, king, 93
Pūrus, 35; 93; 130
Puṣkara, 134; 135; 136; 142
Rāgā, river, 76
Rākā (or Rāksi), river, 11; 54; 56;
58-61; 62; 63; 68; 69; 75; 97
Rāma 36; 66; 135; 138
Rāma Aikṣvāku, 17; 18; 49; 87;
107; 136
Rāma Dāśhrathi, 66
Rāmahradas, 93
Rāma Jāmadagnya-Bhārgava
(Paraśu Rāma) 49; 58; 93
Rāmāyaṇa, 11; 17; 65; 66; 72; 82;
92; 100; 101; 133; 136; 137
Rann of Cambay, 86; 88; 89; 90
Rann of Kaccha (Cutch), 79; 85;
86; 88; 90; 102; 109
Rasā, river, 11; 43; 47; 96; 123
Rauna, mountain, 26
Raupya, river, 57; 65; 66; 67; 69;
93
Raverty, Major, 85; 86
Rāvi, river, 39; 82; 86; 102; 104;
107; 112; 113
Rcika (Bhārgava), 49
Rgveda, 6; 8; 12; 21; 25; 26; 32;
38; 44; 65; 66; 67; 69; 74; 89;
91; 92; 93; 96; 98; 107; 110;
118; 119; 133; 140; 144
R K. Verses, 7; 26; 28; 31
Roth, 119
Rṣis, 4; 16; 21; 26; 91
Rudra, 119
Rudra Koṭi, 83; 87
Rūṣamas, tribe, 26
Sadādeni, (or Nakṭi), river, 71;
72; 73; 77; 100
Sadānirā, river, 141
Sagara Aikṣvāku, 137; 139; 141
Sāhbi (Sāyabī or Sāvi), river, 13;
47; 49
Śakuntalā, 23
Salt range, mountain, 8; 15; 22;
25; 117
Śalya, 77, 78; 82
Sāmbhar, lake, 134; 135
Sannihati, lake, 19
Saptarṣi, era, 144
Sapta Saindhava, 1; 6; 8; 9; 12; 15; 17; 20; 21; 32; 36; 38; 39; 46; 52; 70; 76; 93; 95; 96; 111; 123; 128-131; 132; 134; 136; 139; 141; 142; 143
Sarasvat, sea, 8; 9; 10; 16-18; 26; 27; 28; 29; 47; 56; 61; 63; 80; 83; 87; 88; 89; 101; 104; 106; 107; 114; 116; 128; 130; 133; 134; 135; 136; 137; 138; 142
Sarasvat, devi, 34
Sarasvar, place, 35
Sarasvat, river, 12; 14; 16; 17; 18; 23; 29; 32; 38; 39; 40; 52; 53; 54; 55; 57; 58; 59; 61; 62; 63; 66; 68; 69; 70-94; 95; 96; 97; 100; 101; 102; 103; 106; 107; 108; 109; 116; 120; 122; 126; 128; 141
Sarayu, river, 29; 80; 87; 96-97; 101; 122; 128
Sarvanā, river, 72; 100
Sarmā, 46
Sāryaṇāvat, mountain, 24; 26; 115
Sāryaṇāvat, sea, 8; 10; 19-23; 24; 35; 114; 115; 122; 143; 144
Sāsayāna, holy place, 83
Satīsara, lake, 21; 22; 23; 143; 144
Satluj, river, 39; 82; 85; 86; 89; 102; 103; 107; 108; 109
Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, 13; 14; 31; 66; 141; 143
Satyavati Kausikī, 65; 66
Saviṣṭha, king, 110
Sāyaṇa, 19; 116; 118
Śeṣa, 94
Śigrus, 41; 129
Śilāman, 25
Śilamāvatī, river, 118
Śimyus, 130
Śindhu, river, 4; 15; 22; 25; 28; 37; 40; 43; 80; 82; 84; 85; 87; 88; 89; 91; 96; 97; 103; 114; 116; 117; 119; 120; 121-123; 124; 126; 138
Śindhu Sāgara, 15; 137
Śindhuṣīti Prayāmedha, 37; 126
Śinivilī, 58; 75; 76
Śiphā, river, 97
Śīrā, deity, 119
Śīrā, river, 119; 120
Śrīndhi, river, 97; 98; 99; 100; 101
Śūtā (or Sītā), river, 118-121; 138
Śīva, 21; 138; 143; 144
Śivas, 131
Śivālikas, 43
Śivan, lake, 14
Śohan, river, 20; 117
Śom, river, 71
Śoma, river, 58; 76
Śrājaya Daivavāta, king, 95; 96
Śtein, 111
Śucakṣu, river, 138
Śudās Trstu, 31; 41; 66; 95; 107; 108; 129; 130
Śūdra Ābhīras, 82
Śukhnā, river, 97; 98
Śulemān, mountains, 8; 25; 82
Śuna, deity, 119
Śunaka Bhārgava, 76
Śunaka (adopted Bhrugas) 34; 76
Śunāsira (or Asītā), 118-121
Śunṛtā, river, 52
Suprabhā, river, 78
Śureṇu, river, 78
Susartu, river, 43; 123
Suṣoma, mountains, 20; 21; 24; 117
Suṣomā, river, 20; 21; 24; 25; 40; 88; 115-118; 124
Sutambhara Ātreya, 45
Śutudrī, river, 17; 28; 38; 39; 40; 88; 95; 101; 102-110; 115; 116; 117; 126; 129; 130
Śuvāstu (Subhāvastu. Soastos, Śvāt), river, 124
Śvarṇavatī, river, 67; 69
Śvetā (Safed range), mountain, 124
Śvetayāvarī, river, 124
Śvetī, river, 43; 123
Śyāvakas, tribe, 121
Śyāvāsva Ātreya, rṣi, 45
Śyok, river, 120; 121
Tagaurī, river, 97; 98; 99
Takṣaka, king, 100
Takṣaka Nāgas, 100
INDEX

Takṣakas, clan, 100
Taṅgaurī, river, 99
Taṅgir, river, 46; 123
Tarīm, river, 124
Timūr, 107
Toci, river, 124
Trīśaṇku, 66
Trṇabindu, lake, 14; 18; 63; 80;
83; 87; 135; 141
Trṇāmā, river, 122; 123
Tugra, king, 98
Turvaśa, 93
Turvaśas (or Turvaśus), 35; 95; 96;
130
Ujjālaka, sea, 17; 18; 135; 136
Umlā, river, 96
Unar, river, 120
Urṇavatī, river, 118
Uṣījas, 45
Utbi, Muslim historian, 84
Uterine Bhārgavas, 76

Vadhryaśivas, 34
Vadhūsārā, river, 48; 49; 50
Vāhikas, clan, 100
Vainyas, 36
Vaiśvānara, 10
Vaitahavyas, 36
Vaitarani, river, 67-69; 70
Vaiṣjasaneyi Samhita, 74
Var, river, 90; 100; 101
Varāha, 132; 133; 134; 137; 139;
142; 143; 144
Varuṇa, 4; 61
Vasiṣṭha, rṣi, 5; 36; 74; 75; 77; 78;
134
Vasiṣṭha Dharma Sūtra, 25; 82
Vasiṣṭhas, 34; 36; 76
Vayiyu, river, 124
Vāyu, 119
Vedas, 6
Veth, river, 114
Vibālī, river, 120-121
Vibhva, 61
Videgha Māthava, 66
Videhas (Maithilas), 141; 142
Vimalodakā, river, 78
Vinaśana, 17; 25
Vindhya, 26; 133; 134; 136
Vipāś, river, 28; 88; 101; 102-110;
115; 116; 126; 129
Vīrapatnī, river, 29; 92; 97-101;
103
Vīśālā, river, 78
Viśāṁins, 131
Viśṇu, 136
Viśvāmitra, Kauśik, rṣi, 11; 12;
30; 36; 65; 66; 77; 102
Viśvāmitras (or Kuśikas), 34; 36;
76
Vitastā, (Ṛgvedic name of the
Jhelum river) 21; 22; 38; 39;
40; 110-115; 116; 117; 143;
144
Vitasthānā, river, 120-121
Vivasvat, the father of Manu, 33
Vivasvat Sadana, town, 33; 126
Vouru Kaśa, 23
Vṛchīvats, tribe, 94; 95; 96
Vṛtrāsura, 134

Wadia, 86
Wells, H. G., 12; 129; 141; 142
Wilson, 94

Yadu, 93
Yadus, 35; 128; 130; 140
Yajñīyā, river, 16
Yajurveda, 132
Yukṣu, king, 128
Yakṣus, 41; 129; 129; 130
Yamas, (or Yimas), 23
Yamunā, river, 5; 13; 14; 15; 22;
23; 26; 40; 41; 42; 43; 47; 48;
51; 52; 55; 116; 117; 126; 129;
130; 141
Yār-Badri, river, 71; 72
Yāsin, river, 123
Yāska, 39; 116; 119
Yavyāvatī, river, 94-96; 101
Yayāti, king, 92; 93
Yudhyamadī, 130

Zāskar, river, 120; 121
Zimmer, 80